CHAPTER 11

Fourier Analysis

This chapter on Fourier analysis covers three broad areas: Fourier series in Secs. 11.1–11.4, more general orthonormal series called Sturm–Liouville expansions in Secs. 11.5 and 11.6 and Fourier integrals and transforms in Secs. 11.7–11.9.

The central starting point of Fourier analysis is **Fourier series**. They are infinite series designed to represent general periodic functions in terms of simple ones, namely, cosines and sines. This trigonometric system is ***orthogonal***, allowing the computation of the coefficients of the Fourier series by use of the well-known Euler formulas, as shown in Sec. 11.1. Fourier series are very important to the engineer and physicist because they allow the solution of ODEs in connection with forced oscillations (Sec. 11.3) and the approximation of periodic functions (Sec. 11.4). Moreover, applications of Fourier analysis to PDEs are given in Chap. 12. Fourier series are, in a certain sense, more universal than the familiar Taylor series in calculus because many *discontinuous* periodic functions that come up in applications can be developed in Fourier series but do not have Taylor series expansions.

The underlying idea of the Fourier series can be extended in two important ways. We can replace the trigonometric system by other families of orthogonal functions, e.g., Bessel functions and obtain the **Sturm–Liouville expansions**. Note that related Secs. 11.5 and 11.6 used to be part of Chap. 5 but, for greater readability and logical coherence, are now part of Chap. 11. The second expansion is applying Fourier series to nonperiodic phenomena and obtaining Fourier integrals and Fourier transforms. Both extensions have important applications to solving PDEs as will be shown in Chap. 12.

In a digital age, the ***discrete Fourier transform*** plays an important role. Signals, such as voice or music, are sampled and analyzed for frequencies. An important algorithm, in this context, is the ***fast Fourier transform***. This is discussed in Sec. 11.9.

Note that the two extensions of Fourier series are independent of each other and may be studied in the order suggested in this chapter or by studying Fourier integrals and transforms first and then Sturm–Liouville expansions.

Prerequisite: Elementary integral calculus (needed for Fourier coefficients).
Sections that may be omitted in a shorter course: 11.4–11.9.
References and Answers to Problems: App. 1 Part C, App. 2.

11.1 Fourier Series

Fourier series are infinite series that represent periodic functions in terms of cosines and sines. As such, Fourier series are of greatest importance to the engineer and applied mathematician. To define Fourier series, we first need some background material. A function $f(x)$ is called a **periodic function** if $f(x)$ is defined for all real x, except

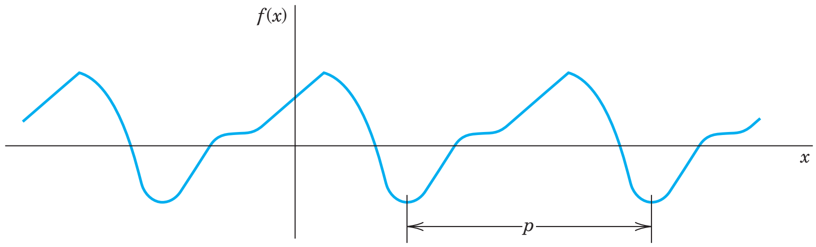


Fig. 258. Periodic function of period p

possibly at some points, and if there is some positive number p, called a **period** of $f(x)$, such that

$$f(x + p) = f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x. \tag{1}$$

(The function $f(x) = \tan x$ is a periodic function that is not defined for all real x but undefined for some points (more precisely, countably many points), that is $x = \pm\pi/2, \pm 3\pi/2, \cdots$.)

The graph of a periodic function has the characteristic that it can be obtained by periodic repetition of its graph in any interval of length p (Fig. 258).

The smallest positive period is often called the *fundamental period.* (See Probs. 2–4.)

Familiar periodic functions are the cosine, sine, tangent, and cotangent. Examples of functions that are not periodic are $x, x^2, x^3, e^x, \cosh x$, and $\ln x$, to mention just a few.

If $f(x)$ has period p, it also has the period $2p$ because (1) implies $f(x + 2p) = f([x + p] + p) = f(x + p) = f(x)$, etc.; thus for any integer $n = 1, 2, 3, \cdots$,

$$f(x + np) = f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x. \tag{2}$$

Furthermore if $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ have period p, then $af(x) + bg(x)$ with any constants a and b also has the period p.

Our problem in the first few sections of this chapter will be the representation of various ***functions $f(x)$ of period 2π*** in terms of the simple functions

$$1, \quad \cos x, \quad \sin x, \quad \cos 2x, \quad \sin 2x, \cdots, \quad \cos nx, \quad \sin nx, \cdots. \tag{3}$$

All these functions have the period 2π. They form the so-called **trigonometric system**. Figure 259 shows the first few of them (except for the constant 1, which is periodic with any period).

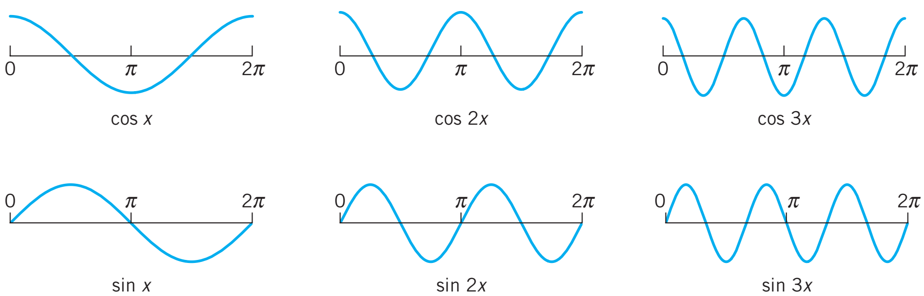


Fig. 259. Cosine and sine functions having the period 2π (the first few members of the trigonometric system (3), except for the constant 1)

The series to be obtained will be a **trigonometric series**, that is, a series of the form

$$a_0 + a_1 \cos x + b_1 \sin x + a_2 \cos 2x + b_2 \sin 2x + \cdots$$
$$= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx). \tag{4}$$

$a_0, a_1, b_1, a_2, b_2, \cdots$ are constants, called the **coefficients** of the series. We see that each term has the period 2π. Hence *if the coefficients are such that the series converges, its sum will be a function of period* 2π.

Expressions such as (4) will occur frequently in Fourier analysis. To compare the expression on the right with that on the left, simply write the terms in the summation. Convergence of one side implies convergence of the other and the sums will be the same.

Now suppose that $f(x)$ is a given function of period 2π and is such that it can be **represented** by a series (4), that is, (4) converges and, moreover, has the sum $f(x)$. Then, using the equality sign, we write

$$f(x) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx) \tag{5}$$

and call (5) the **Fourier series** of $f(x)$. We shall prove that in this case the coefficients of (5) are the so-called **Fourier coefficients** of $f(x)$, given by the **Euler formulas**

(6)

$$\textbf{(0)}\quad a_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)\, dx$$

$$\textbf{(a)}\quad a_n = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)\cos nx\, dx \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots$$

$$\textbf{(b)}\quad b_n = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)\sin nx\, dx \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots.$$

The name "Fourier series" is sometimes also used in the exceptional case that (5) with coefficients (6) does not converge or does not have the sum $f(x)$—this may happen but is merely of theoretical interest. (For Euler see footnote 4 in Sec. 2.5.)

A Basic Example

Before we derive the Euler formulas (6), let us consider how (5) and (6) are applied in this important basic example. Be fully alert, as the way we approach and solve this example will be the technique you will use for other functions. Note that the integration is a little bit different from what you are familiar with in calculus because of the n. Do not just routinely use your software but try to get a good understanding and make observations: How are continuous functions (cosines and sines) able to represent a given discontinuous function? How does the quality of the approximation increase if you take more and more terms of the series? Why are the approximating functions, called the

partial sums of the series, in this example always zero at 0 and π? Why is the factor $1/n$ (obtained in the integration) important?

EXAMPLE 1 **Periodic Rectangular Wave (Fig. 260)**

Find the Fourier coefficients of the periodic function $f(x)$ in Fig. 260. The formula is

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -k & \text{if} \quad -\pi < x < 0 \\ k & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < \pi \end{cases} \qquad \text{and} \qquad f(x + 2\pi) = f(x). \tag{7}$$

Functions of this kind occur as external forces acting on mechanical systems, electromotive forces in electric circuits, etc. (The value of $f(x)$ at a single point does not affect the integral; hence we can leave $f(x)$ undefined at $x = 0$ and $x = \pm\pi$.)

Solution. From (6.0) we obtain $a_0 = 0$. This can also be seen without integration, since the area under the curve of $f(x)$ between $-\pi$ and π (taken with a minus sign where $f(x)$ is negative) is zero. From (6a) we obtain the coefficients $a_1, a_2, \cdots$ of the cosine terms. Since $f(x)$ is given by two expressions, the integrals from $-\pi$ to π split into two integrals:

$$a_n = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)\cos nx\, dx = \frac{1}{\pi}\left[\int_{-\pi}^{0}(-k)\cos nx\, dx + \int_{0}^{\pi} k\cos nx\, dx\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{\pi}\left[-k\frac{\sin nx}{n}\Bigg|_{-\pi}^{0} + k\frac{\sin nx}{n}\Bigg|_{0}^{\pi}\right] = 0$$

because $\sin nx = 0$ at $-\pi$, 0, and π for all $n = 1, 2, \cdots$. We see that all these cosine coefficients are zero. That is, the Fourier series of (7) has no cosine terms, just sine terms, it is a **Fourier sine series** with coefficients $b_1, b_2, \cdots$ obtained from (6b);

$$b_n = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)\sin nx\, dx = \frac{1}{\pi}\left[\int_{-\pi}^{0}(-k)\sin nx\, dx + \int_{0}^{\pi} k\sin nx\, dx\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{\pi}\left[k\frac{\cos nx}{n}\Bigg|_{-\pi}^{0} - k\frac{\cos nx}{n}\Bigg|_{0}^{\pi}\right].$$

Since $\cos(-\alpha) = \cos\alpha$ and $\cos 0 = 1$, this yields

$$b_n = \frac{k}{n\pi}[\cos 0 - \cos(-n\pi) - \cos n\pi + \cos 0] = \frac{2k}{n\pi}(1 - \cos n\pi).$$

Now, $\cos\pi = -1$, $\cos 2\pi = 1$, $\cos 3\pi = -1$, etc.; in general,

$$\cos n\pi = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{for odd } n, \\ 1 & \text{for even } n, \end{cases} \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad 1 - \cos n\pi = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{for odd } n, \\ 0 & \text{for even } n. \end{cases}$$

Hence the Fourier coefficients b_n of our function are

$$b_1 = \frac{4k}{\pi}, \qquad b_2 = 0, \qquad b_3 = \frac{4k}{3\pi}, \qquad b_4 = 0, \qquad b_5 = \frac{4k}{5\pi}, \cdots.$$

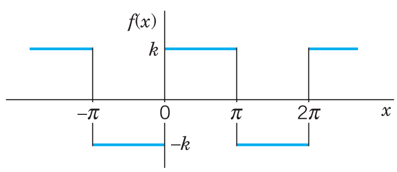


Fig. 260. Given function $f(x)$ (Periodic reactangular wave)

Since the a_n are zero, the Fourier series of $f(x)$ is

$$\frac{4k}{\pi}\left(\sin x + \tfrac{1}{3}\sin 3x + \tfrac{1}{5}\sin 5x + \cdots\right). \tag{8}$$

The partial sums are

$$S_1 = \frac{4k}{\pi}\sin x, \qquad S_2 = \frac{4k}{\pi}\left(\sin x + \frac{1}{3}\sin 3x\right). \qquad \text{etc.}$$

Their graphs in Fig. 261 seem to indicate that the series is convergent and has the sum $f(x)$, the given function. We notice that at $x = 0$ and $x = \pi$, the points of discontinuity of $f(x)$, all partial sums have the value zero, the arithmetic mean of the limits $-k$ and k of our function, at these points. This is typical.

Furthermore, assuming that $f(x)$ is the sum of the series and setting $x = \pi/2$, we have

$$f\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = k = \frac{4k}{\pi}\left(1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - + \cdots\right).$$

Thus

$$1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + - \cdots = \frac{\pi}{4}.$$

This is a famous result obtained by Leibniz in 1673 from geometric considerations. It illustrates that the values of various series with constant terms can be obtained by evaluating Fourier series at specific points. ■

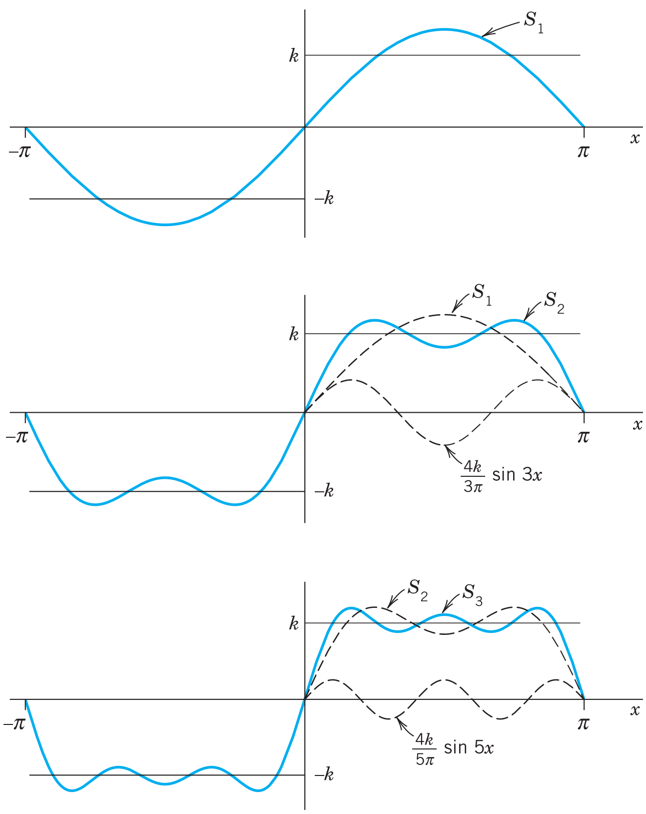


Fig. 261. First three partial sums of the corresponding Fourier series

Derivation of the Euler Formulas (6)

The key to the Euler formulas (6) is the **orthogonality** of (3), a concept of basic importance, as follows. Here we generalize the concept of inner product (Sec. 9.3) to functions.

THEOREM 1

Orthogonality of the Trigonometric System (3)

The trigonometric system (3) *is orthogonal on the interval* $-\pi \leqq x \leqq \pi$ (hence also on $0 \leqq x \leqq 2\pi$ or any other interval of length 2π because of periodicity); *that is, the integral of the product of any two functions in* (3) *over that interval is* 0, *so that for any integers n and m,*

$$\text{(9)}\qquad \begin{aligned} &\textbf{(a)} \quad \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos nx \cos mx \, dx = 0 \qquad (n \neq m) \\ &\textbf{(b)} \quad \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin nx \sin mx \, dx = 0 \qquad (n \neq m) \\ &\textbf{(c)} \quad \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin nx \cos mx \, dx = 0 \qquad (n \neq m \text{ or } n = m). \end{aligned}$$

PROOF This follows simply by transforming the integrands trigonometrically from products into sums. In (9a) and (9b), by (11) in App. A3.1,

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos nx \cos mx \, dx = \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos\,(n+m)x \, dx + \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos\,(n-m)x \, dx$$

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin nx \sin mx \, dx = \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos\,(n-m)x \, dx - \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos\,(n+m)x \, dx.$$

Since $m \neq n$ (integer!), the integrals on the right are all 0. Similarly, in (9c), for all integer m and n (without exception; do you see why?)

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin nx \cos mx \, dx = \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin\,(n+m)x \, dx + \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin\,(n-m)x \, dx = 0 + 0. \qquad \blacksquare$$

Application of Theorem 1 to the Fourier Series (5)

We prove (6.0). Integrating on both sides of (5) from $-\pi$ to π, we get

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) \, dx = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \left[a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx) \right] dx.$$

We now assume that termwise integration is allowed. (We shall say in the proof of Theorem 2 when this is true.) Then we obtain

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) \, dx = a_0 \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} dx + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(a_n \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos nx \, dx + b_n \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin nx \, dx \right).$$

The first term on the right equals $2\pi a_0$. Integration shows that all the other integrals are 0. Hence division by 2π gives (6.0).

We prove (6a). Multiplying (5) on both sides by $\cos mx$ with any ***fixed*** positive integer m and integrating from $-\pi$ to π, we have

$$\text{(10)} \qquad \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)\cos mx\,dx = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi}\left[a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx)\right]\cos mx\,dx.$$

We now integrate term by term. Then on the right we obtain an integral of $a_0 \cos mx$, which is 0; an integral of $a_n \cos nx \cos mx$, which is $a_m \pi$ for $n = m$ and 0 for $n \neq m$ by (9a); and an integral of $b_n \sin nx \cos mx$, which is 0 for all n and m by (9c). Hence the right side of (10) equals $a_m \pi$. Division by π gives (6a) (with m instead of n).

We finally prove (6b). Multiplying (5) on both sides by $\sin mx$ with any ***fixed*** positive integer m and integrating from $-\pi$ to π, we get

$$\text{(11)} \qquad \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)\sin mx\,dx = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi}\left[a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx)\right]\sin mx\,dx.$$

Integrating term by term, we obtain on the right an integral of $a_0 \sin mx$, which is 0; an integral of $a_n \cos nx \sin mx$, which is 0 by (9c); and an integral of $b_n \sin nx \sin mx$, which is $b_m \pi$ if $n = m$ and 0 if $n \neq m$, by (9b). This implies (6b) (with n denoted by m). This completes the proof of the Euler formulas (6) for the Fourier coefficients. ■

Convergence and Sum of a Fourier Series

The class of functions that can be represented by Fourier series is surprisingly large and general. Sufficient conditions valid in most applications are as follows.

THEOREM 2

Representation by a Fourier Series

Let $f(x)$ be periodic with period 2π and piecewise continuous (see Sec. 6.1) *in the interval $-\pi \leqq x \leqq \pi$. Furthermore, let $f(x)$ have a left-hand derivative and a right-hand derivative at each point of that interval. Then the Fourier series* (5) *of $f(x)$* [with coefficients (6)] *converges. Its sum is $f(x)$, except at points x_0 where $f(x)$ is discontinuous. There the sum of the series is the average of the left- and right-hand limits*[2] *of $f(x)$ at x_0.*

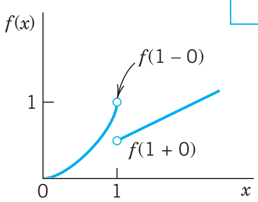


Fig. 262. Left- and right-hand limits

$f(1 - 0) = 1,$

$f(1 + 0) = \frac{1}{2}$

of the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if } x < 1 \\ x/2 & \text{if } x \geqq 1 \end{cases}$$

---

[2]The **left-hand limit** of $f(x)$ at x_0 is defined as the limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches x_0 from the left and is commonly denoted by $f(x_0 - 0)$. Thus

$$f(x_0 - 0) = \lim_{h \to 0} f(x_0 - h) \text{ as } h \to 0 \text{ through positive values.}$$

The **right-hand limit** is denoted by $f(x_0 + 0)$ and

$$f(x_0 + 0) = \lim_{h \to 0} f(x_0 + h) \text{ as } h \to 0 \text{ through positive values.}$$

The **left-** and **right-hand derivatives** of $f(x)$ at x_0 are defined as the limits of

$$\frac{f(x_0 - h) - f(x_0 - 0)}{-h} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0 + 0)}{-h},$$

respectively, as $h \to 0$ through positive values. Of course if $f(x)$ is continuous at x_0, the last term in both numerators is simply $f(x_0)$.

PROOF We prove convergence, but only for a continuous function $f(x)$ having continuous first and second derivatives. And we do not prove that the sum of the series is $f(x)$ because these proofs are much more advanced; see, for instance, Ref. [C12] listed in App. 1. Integrating (6a) by parts, we obtain

$$a_n = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)\cos nx\,dx = \frac{f(x)\sin nx}{n\pi}\Bigg|_{-\pi}^{\pi} - \frac{1}{n\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f'(x)\sin nx\,dx.$$

The first term on the right is zero. Another integration by parts gives

$$a_n = \frac{f'(x)\cos nx}{n^2\pi}\Bigg|_{-\pi}^{\pi} - \frac{1}{n^2\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f''(x)\cos nx\,dx.$$

The first term on the right is zero because of the periodicity and continuity of $f'(x)$. Since f'' is continuous in the interval of integration, we have

$$|f''(x)| < M$$

for an appropriate constant M. Furthermore, $|\cos nx| \leqq 1$. It follows that

$$|a_n| = \frac{1}{n^2\pi}\left|\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f''(x)\cos nx\,dx\right| < \frac{1}{n^2\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} M\,dx = \frac{2M}{n^2}.$$

Similarly, $|b_n| < 2\,M/n^2$ for all n. Hence the absolute value of each term of the Fourier series of $f(x)$ is at most equal to the corresponding term of the series

$$|a_0| + 2M\left(1 + 1 + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} + \cdots\right)$$

which is convergent. Hence that Fourier series converges and the proof is complete. (Readers already familiar with uniform convergence will see that, by the Weierstrass test in Sec. 15.5, under our present assumptions the Fourier series converges uniformly, and our derivation of (6) by integrating term by term is then justified by Theorem 3 of Sec. 15.5.) ■

EXAMPLE 2 **Convergence at a Jump as Indicated in Theorem 2**

The rectangular wave in Example 1 has a jump at $x = 0$. Its left-hand limit there is $-k$ and its right-hand limit is k (Fig. 261). Hence the average of these limits is 0. The Fourier series (8) of the wave does indeed converge to this value when $x = 0$ because then all its terms are 0. Similarly for the other jumps. This is in agreement with Theorem 2. ■

Summary. A Fourier series of a given function $f(x)$ of period 2π is a series of the form (5) with coefficients given by the Euler formulas (6). Theorem 2 gives conditions that are sufficient for this series to converge and at each x to have the value $f(x)$, except at discontinuities of $f(x)$, where the series equals the arithmetic mean of the left-hand and right-hand limits of $f(x)$ at that point.

PROBLEM SET 11.1

1–5 PERIOD, FUNDAMENTAL PERIOD

The *fundamental period* is the smallest positive period. Find it for

1. $\cos x$, $\sin x$, $\cos 2x$, $\sin 2x$, $\cos \pi x$, $\sin \pi x$, $\cos 2\pi x$, $\sin 2\pi x$

2. $\cos nx$, $\sin nx$, $\cos \dfrac{2\pi x}{k}$, $\sin \dfrac{2\pi x}{k}$, $\cos \dfrac{2\pi nx}{k}$, $\sin \dfrac{2\pi nx}{k}$

3. If $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ have period p, show that $h(x) = af(x) + bg(x)$ (a, b, constant) has the period p. Thus all functions of period p form a **vector space**.

4. Change of scale. If $f(x)$ has period p, show that $f(ax)$, $a \neq 0$, and $f(x/b)$, $b \neq 0$, are periodic functions of x of periods p/a and bp, respectively. Give examples.

5. Show that $f =$ const is periodic with any period but has no fundamental period.

6–10 GRAPHS OF 2π–PERIODIC FUNCTIONS

Sketch or graph $f(x)$ which for $-\pi < x < \pi$ is given as follows.

6. $f(x) = |x|$

7. $f(x) = |\sin x|$, $f(x) = \sin |x|$

8. $f(x) = e^{-|x|}$, $f(x) = |e^{-x}|$

9. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } -\pi < x < 0 \\ \pi - x & \text{if } 0 < x < \pi \end{cases}$

10. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -\cos^2 x & \text{if } -\pi < x < 0 \\ \cos^2 x & \text{if } 0 < x < \pi \end{cases}$

11. Calculus review. Review integration techniques for integrals as they are likely to arise from the Euler formulas, for instance, definite integrals of $x \cos nx$, $x^2 \sin nx$, $e^{-2x} \cos nx$, etc.

12–21 FOURIER SERIES

Find the Fourier series of the given function $f(x)$, which is assumed to have the period 2π. Show the details of your work. Sketch or graph the partial sums up to that including $\cos 5x$ and $\sin 5x$.

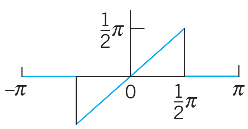
12. $f(x)$ in Prob. 6

13. $f(x)$ in Prob. 9

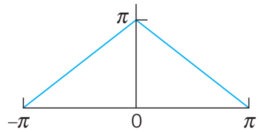
14. $f(x) = x^2 \quad (-\pi < x < \pi)$

15. $f(x) = x^2 \quad (0 < x < 2\pi)$

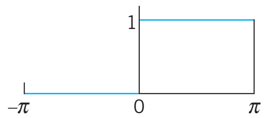
16.



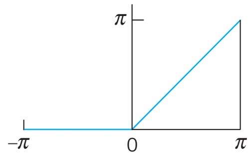
17.



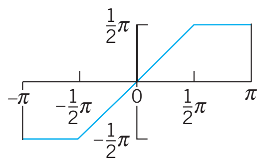
18.



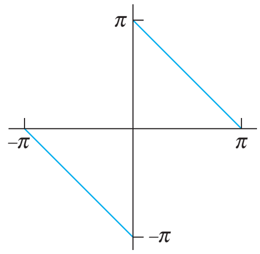
19.



20.



21.



22. CAS EXPERIMENT. Graphing. Write a program for graphing partial sums of the following series. Guess from the graph what $f(x)$ the series may represent. Confirm or disprove your guess by using the Euler formulas.

(a) $2(\sin x + \frac{1}{3}\sin 3x + \frac{1}{5}\sin 5x + \cdots)$

$\qquad - 2(\frac{1}{2}\sin 2x + \frac{1}{4}\sin 4x + \frac{1}{6}\sin 6x \cdots)$

(b) $\dfrac{1}{2} + \dfrac{4}{\pi^2}\left(\cos x + \dfrac{1}{9}\cos 3x + \dfrac{1}{25}\cos 5x + \cdots\right)$

(c) $\frac{2}{3}\pi^2 + 4(\cos x - \frac{1}{4}\cos 2x + \frac{1}{9}\cos 3x - \frac{1}{16}\cos 4x + - \cdots)$

23. Discontinuities. Verify the last statement in Theorem 2 for the discontinuities of $f(x)$ in Prob. 21.

24. CAS EXPERIMENT. Orthogonality. Integrate and graph the integral of the product $\cos mx \cos nx$ (with various integer m and n of your choice) from $-a$ to a as a function of a and conclude orthogonality of $\cos mx$

and $\cos nx$ $(m \neq n)$ for $a = \pi$ from the graph. For what m and n will you get orthogonality for $a = \pi/2, \pi/3, \pi/4$? Other a? Extend the experiment to $\cos mx \sin nx$ and $\sin mx \sin nx$.

25. CAS EXPERIMENT. Order of Fourier Coefficients. The order seems to be $1/n$ if f is discontinous, and $1/n^2$ if f is continuous but $f' = df/dx$ is discontinuous, $1/n^3$ if f and f' are continuous but f'' is discontinuous, etc. Try to verify this for examples. Try to prove it by integrating the Euler formulas by parts. What is the practical significance of this?

11.2 Arbitrary Period. Even and Odd Functions. Half-Range Expansions

We now expand our initial basic discussion of Fourier series.

Orientation. This section concerns three topics:

1. Transition from period 2π to any period $2L$, for the function f, simply by a transformation of scale on the x-axis.
2. Simplifications. Only cosine terms if f is even ("Fourier cosine series"). Only sine terms if f is odd ("Fourier sine series").
3. Expansion of f given for $0 \leqq x \leqq L$ in two Fourier series, one having only cosine terms and the other only sine terms ("half-range expansions").

1. From Period 2π to Any Period $p = 2L$

Clearly, periodic functions in applications may have any period, not just 2π as in the last section (chosen to have simple formulas). The notation $p = 2L$ for the period is practical because L will be a length of a violin string in Sec. 12.2, of a rod in heat conduction in Sec. 12.5, and so on.

The transition from period 2π to be period $p = 2L$ is effected by a suitable change of scale, as follows. Let $f(x)$ have period $p = 2L$. Then we can introduce a new variable v such that $f(x)$, as a function of v, has period 2π. If we set

$$(1) \qquad \text{(a)} \quad x = \frac{p}{2\pi} v, \qquad \text{so that} \qquad \text{(b)} \quad v = \frac{2\pi}{p} x = \frac{\pi}{L} x$$

then $v = \pm\pi$ corresponds to $x = \pm L$. This means that f, as a function of v, has period 2π and, therefore, a Fourier series of the form

$$(2) \qquad f(x) = f\left(\frac{L}{\pi} v\right) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos nv + b_n \sin nv)$$

with coefficients obtained from (6) in the last section

$$(3) \qquad \begin{aligned} a_0 &= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f\left(\frac{L}{\pi} v\right) dv, \qquad a_n = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f\left(\frac{L}{\pi} v\right) \cos nv\, dv, \\ b_n &= \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f\left(\frac{L}{\pi} v\right) \sin nv\, dv. \end{aligned}$$

We could use these formulas directly, but the change to x simplifies calculations. Since

$$v = \frac{\pi}{L}x, \qquad \text{we have} \qquad dv = \frac{\pi}{L}\,dx \tag{4}$$

and we integrate over x from $-L$ to L. Consequently, we obtain for a function $f(x)$ of period $2L$ the Fourier series

$$f(x) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(a_n \cos\frac{n\pi}{L}x + b_n \sin\frac{n\pi}{L}x\right) \tag{5}$$

with the **Fourier coefficients** of $f(x)$ given by the **Euler formulas** (π/L in dx cancels $1/\pi$ in (3))

(6)

$$\textbf{(0)} \quad a_0 = \frac{1}{2L}\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\,dx$$

$$\textbf{(a)} \quad a_n = \frac{1}{L}\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\cos\frac{n\pi x}{L}\,dx \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots$$

$$\textbf{(b)} \quad b_n = \frac{1}{L}\int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\sin\frac{n\pi x}{L}\,dx \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots .$$

Just as in Sec. 11.1, we continue to call (5) with any coefficients a **trigonometric series**. And we can integrate from 0 to $2L$ or over any other interval of length $p = 2L$.

EXAMPLE 1 Periodic Rectangular Wave

Find the Fourier series of the function (Fig. 263)

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if} \quad -2 < x < -1 \\ k & \text{if} \quad -1 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad 1 < x < 2 \end{cases} \qquad p = 2L = 4, \quad L = 2.$$

Solution. From (6.0) we obtain $a_0 = k/2$ (verify!). From (6a) we obtain

$$a_n = \frac{1}{2}\int_{-2}^{2} f(x)\cos\frac{n\pi x}{2}\,dx = \frac{1}{2}\int_{-1}^{1} k\cos\frac{n\pi x}{2}\,dx = \frac{2k}{n\pi}\sin\frac{n\pi}{2}.$$

Thus $a_n = 0$ if n is even and

$$a_n = 2k/n\pi \quad \text{if} \quad n = 1, 5, 9, \cdots, \qquad a_n = -2k/n\pi \quad \text{if} \quad n = 3, 7, 11, \cdots .$$

From (6b) we find that $b_n = 0$ for $n = 1, 2, \cdots$. Hence the Fourier series is a **Fourier cosine series** (that is, it has no sine terms)

$$f(x) = \frac{k}{2} + \frac{2k}{\pi}\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{2}x - \frac{1}{3}\cos\frac{3\pi}{2}x + \frac{1}{5}\cos\frac{5\pi}{2}x - + \cdots\right).$$

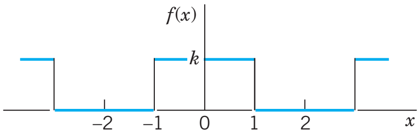


Fig. 263. Example 1

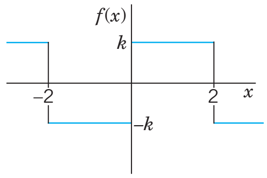


Fig. 264. Example 2

EXAMPLE 2 Periodic Rectangular Wave. Change of Scale

Find the Fourier series of the function (Fig. 264)

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -k & \text{if} \quad -2 < x < 0 \\ k & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < 2 \end{cases} \qquad p = 2L = 4, \qquad L = 2.$$

Solution. Since $L = 2$, we have in (3) $v = \pi x/2$ and obtain from (8) in Sec. 11.1 with v instead of x, that is,

$$g(v) = \frac{4k}{\pi}\left(\sin v + \frac{1}{3}\sin 3v + \frac{1}{5}\sin 5v + \cdots\right)$$

the present Fourier series

$$f(x) = \frac{4k}{\pi}\left(\sin\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{1}{3}\sin\frac{3\pi}{2}x + \frac{1}{5}\sin\frac{5\pi}{2}x + \cdots\right).$$

Confirm this by using (6) and integrating. ■

EXAMPLE 3 Half-Wave Rectifier

A sinusoidal voltage $E \sin \omega t$, where t is time, is passed through a half-wave rectifier that clips the negative portion of the wave (Fig. 265). Find the Fourier series of the resulting periodic function

$$u(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if} \quad -L < t < 0, \\ E\sin\omega t & \text{if} \quad 0 < t < L \end{cases} \qquad p = 2L = \frac{2\pi}{\omega}, \qquad L = \frac{\pi}{\omega}.$$

Solution. Since $u = 0$ when $-L < t < 0$, we obtain from (6.0), with t instead of x,

$$a_0 = \frac{\omega}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi/\omega} E\sin\omega t\,dt = \frac{E}{\pi}$$

and from (6a), by using formula (11) in App. A3.1 with $x = \omega t$ and $y = n\omega t$,

$$a_n = \frac{\omega}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi/\omega} E\sin\omega t\cos n\omega t\,dt = \frac{\omega E}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi/\omega}[\sin(1+n)\,\omega t + \sin(1-n)\,\omega t]\,dt.$$

If $n = 1$, the integral on the right is zero, and if $n = 2, 3, \cdots$, we readily obtain

$$a_n = \frac{\omega E}{2\pi}\left[-\frac{\cos(1+n)\omega t}{(1+n)\omega} - \frac{\cos(1-n)\omega t}{(1-n)\omega}\right]_0^{\pi/\omega}$$

$$= \frac{E}{2\pi}\left(\frac{-\cos(1+n)\pi + 1}{1+n} + \frac{-\cos(1-n)\pi + 1}{1-n}\right).$$

If n is odd, this is equal to zero, and for even n we have

$$a_n = \frac{E}{2\pi}\left(\frac{2}{1+n} + \frac{2}{1-n}\right) = -\frac{2E}{(n-1)(n+1)\pi} \qquad (n = 2, 4, \cdots).$$

In a similar fashion we find from (6b) that $b_1 = E/2$ and $b_n = 0$ for $n = 2, 3, \cdots$. Consequently,

$$u(t) = \frac{E}{\pi} + \frac{E}{2} \sin \omega t - \frac{2E}{\pi}\left(\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} \cos 2\omega t + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 5} \cos 4\omega t + \cdots\right).$$

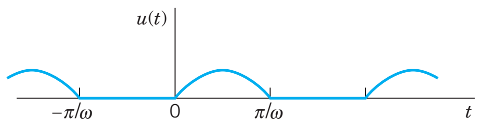


Fig. 265. Half-wave rectifier

2. Simplifications: Even and Odd Functions

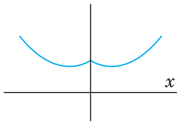


Fig. 266. Even function

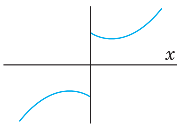


Fig. 267. Odd function

If $f(x)$ is an **even function**, that is, $f(-x) = f(x)$ (see Fig. 266), its Fourier series (5) reduces to a **Fourier cosine series**

(5*) $$f(x) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos \frac{n\pi}{L} x \qquad (f \text{ even})$$

with coefficients (note: integration from 0 to L only!)

(6*) $$a_0 = \frac{1}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\, dx, \qquad a_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x) \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L}\, dx, \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots.$$

If $f(x)$ is an **odd function**, that is, $f(-x) = -f(x)$ (see Fig. 267), its Fourier series (5) reduces to a **Fourier sine series**

(5)** $$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x \qquad (f \text{ odd})$$

with coefficients

(6**) $$b_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx.$$

These formulas follow from (5) and (6) by remembering from calculus that the definite integral gives the net area (= area above the axis minus area below the axis) under the curve of a function between the limits of integration. This implies

(7)
$$\text{(a)} \quad \int_{-L}^{L} g(x)\, dx = 2\int_0^L g(x)\, dx \qquad \text{for even } g$$
$$\text{(b)} \quad \int_{-L}^{L} h(x)\, dx = 0 \qquad \text{for odd } h$$

Formula (7b) implies the reduction to the cosine series (even f makes $f(x) \sin (n\pi x/L)$ odd since sin is odd) and to the sine series (odd f makes $f(x) \cos (n\pi x/L)$ odd since cos is even). Similarly, (7a) reduces the integrals in (6*) and (6**) to integrals from 0 to L. These reductions are obvious from the graphs of an even and an odd function. (Give a formal proof.)

Summary

Even Function of Period 2π. If f is even and $L = \pi$, then

$$f(x) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos nx$$

with coefficients

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} f(x)\,dx, \qquad a_n = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} f(x)\cos nx\,dx, \quad n = 1, 2, \cdots$$

Odd Function of Period 2π. If f is odd and $L = \pi$, then

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin nx$$

with coefficients

$$b_n = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} f(x)\sin nx\,dx, \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots.$$

EXAMPLE 4 Fourier Cosine and Sine Series

The rectangular wave in Example 1 is even. Hence it follows without calculation that its Fourier series is a Fourier cosine series, the b_n are all zero. Similarly, it follows that the Fourier series of the odd function in Example 2 is a Fourier sine series.

In Example 3 you can see that the Fourier cosine series represents $u(t) - E/\pi - \frac{1}{2}E \sin \omega t$. Can you prove that this is an even function? ■

Further simplifications result from the following property, whose very simple proof is left to the student.

THEOREM 1 Sum and Scalar Multiple

The Fourier coefficients of a sum $f_1 + f_2$ are the sums of the corresponding Fourier coefficients of f_1 and f_2.

The Fourier coefficients of cf are c times the corresponding Fourier coefficients of f.

EXAMPLE 5 Sawtooth Wave

Find the Fourier series of the function (Fig. 268)

$$f(x) = x + \pi \quad \text{if} \quad -\pi < x < \pi \qquad \text{and} \qquad f(x + 2\pi) = f(x).$$

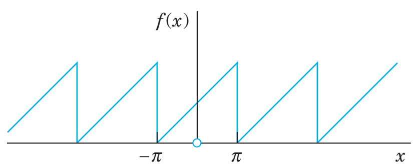


Fig. 268. The function $f(x)$. Sawtooth wave

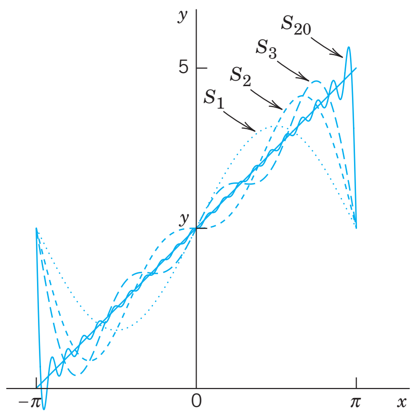


Fig. 269. Partial sums S_1, S_2, S_3, S_{20} in Example 5

Solution. We have $f = f_1 + f_2$, where $f_1 = x$ and $f_2 = \pi$. The Fourier coefficients of f_2 are zero, except for the first one (the constant term), which is π. Hence, by Theorem 1, the Fourier coefficients a_n, b_n are those of f_1, except for a_0, which is π. Since f_1 is odd, $a_n = 0$ for $n = 1, 2, \cdots$, and

$$b_n = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} f_1(x) \sin nx\, dx = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} x \sin nx\, dx.$$

Integrating by parts, we obtain

$$b_n = \frac{2}{\pi}\left[\frac{-x\cos nx}{n}\bigg|_0^{\pi} + \frac{1}{n}\int_0^{\pi} \cos nx\, dx\right] = -\frac{2}{n}\cos n\pi.$$

Hence $b_1 = 2$, $b_2 = -\frac{2}{2}$, $b_3 = \frac{2}{3}$, $b_4 = -\frac{2}{4}, \cdots$, and the Fourier series of $f(x)$ is

$$f(x) = \pi + 2\left(\sin x - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2x + \frac{1}{3}\sin 3x - + \cdots\right). \qquad \text{(Fig. 269)}$$

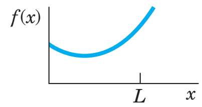
3. Half-Range Expansions

Half-range expansions are Fourier series. The idea is simple and useful. Figure 270 explains it. We want to represent $f(x)$ in Fig. 270.0 by a Fourier series, where $f(x)$ may be the shape of a distorted violin string or the temperature in a metal bar of length L, for example. (Corresponding problems will be discussed in Chap. 12.) Now comes the idea.

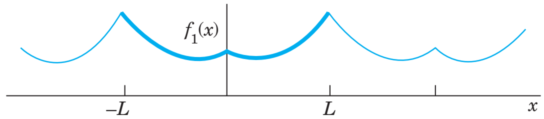
We could extend $f(x)$ as a function of period L and develop the extended function into a Fourier series. But this series would, in general, contain *both* cosine *and* sine terms. We can do better and get simpler series. Indeed, for our given f we can calculate Fourier coefficients from (6*) or from (6**). And we have a choice and can take what seems more practical. If we use (6*), we get (5*). This is the **even periodic extension** f_1 of f in Fig. 270a. If we choose (6**) instead, we get (5**), the **odd periodic extension** f_2 of f in Fig. 270b.

Both extensions have period $2L$. This motivates the name **half-range expansions**: f is given (and of physical interest) only on half the range, that is, on half the interval of periodicity of length $2L$.

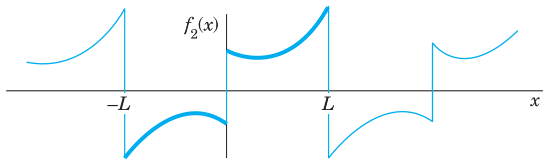
Let us illustrate these ideas with an example that we shall also need in Chap. 12.



(0) The given function $f(x)$



(a) $f(x)$ continued as an ***even*** periodic function of period $2L$



(b) $f(x)$ continued as an ***odd*** periodic function of period $2L$

Fig. 270. Even and odd extensions of period $2L$

EXAMPLE 6 "Triangle" and Its Half-Range Expansions

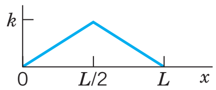


Fig. 271. The given function in Example 6

Find the two half-range expansions of the function (Fig. 271)

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{2k}{L}x & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < \dfrac{L}{2} \\[2ex] \dfrac{2k}{L}(L - x) & \text{if} \quad \dfrac{L}{2} < x < L. \end{cases}$$

Solution. **(a)** ***Even periodic extension.*** From (6*) we obtain

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{L}\left[\frac{2k}{L}\int_0^{L/2} x\,dx + \frac{2k}{L}\int_{L/2}^{L}(L - x)\,dx\right] = \frac{k}{2},$$

$$a_n = \frac{2}{L}\left[\frac{2k}{L}\int_L^{L/2} x\cos\frac{n\pi}{L}x\,dx + \frac{2k}{L}\int_{L/2}^{L}(L - x)\cos\frac{n\pi}{L}x\,dx\right].$$

We consider a_n. For the first integral we obtain by integration by parts

$$\int_0^{L/2} x\cos\frac{n\pi}{L}x\,dx = \frac{Lx}{n\pi}\sin\frac{n\pi}{L}x\,\Bigg|_0^{L/2} - \frac{L}{n\pi}\int_0^{L/2}\sin\frac{n\pi}{L}x\,dx$$

$$= \frac{L^2}{2n\pi}\sin\frac{n\pi}{2} + \frac{L^2}{n^2\pi^2}\left(\cos\frac{n\pi}{2} - 1\right).$$

Similarly, for the second integral we obtain

$$\int_{L/2}^{L}(L - x)\cos\frac{n\pi}{L}x\,dx = \frac{L}{n\pi}(L - x)\sin\frac{n\pi}{L}x\,\Bigg|_{L/2}^{L} + \frac{L}{n\pi}\int_{L/2}^{L}\sin\frac{n\pi}{L}x\,dx$$

$$= \left(0 - \frac{L}{n\pi}\left(L - \frac{L}{2}\right)\sin\frac{n\pi}{2}\right) - \frac{L^2}{n^2\pi^2}\left(\cos n\pi - \cos\frac{n\pi}{2}\right).$$

We insert these two results into the formula for a_n. The sine terms cancel and so does a factor L^2. This gives

$$a_n = \frac{4k}{n^2\pi^2}\left(2\cos\frac{n\pi}{2} - \cos n\pi - 1\right).$$

Thus,

$$a_2 = -16k/(2^2\pi^2), \qquad a_6 = -16k/(6^2\pi^2), \qquad a_{10} = -16k/(10^2\pi^2), \cdots$$

and $a_n = 0$ if $n \neq 2, 6, 10, 14, \cdots$. Hence the first half-range expansion of $f(x)$ is (Fig. 272a)

$$f(x) = \frac{k}{2} - \frac{16k}{\pi^2}\left(\frac{1}{2^2}\cos\frac{2\pi}{L}x + \frac{1}{6^2}\cos\frac{6\pi}{L}x + \cdots\right).$$

This Fourier cosine series represents the even periodic extension of the given function $f(x)$, of period $2L$.

(b) ***Odd periodic extension.*** Similarly, from (6**) we obtain

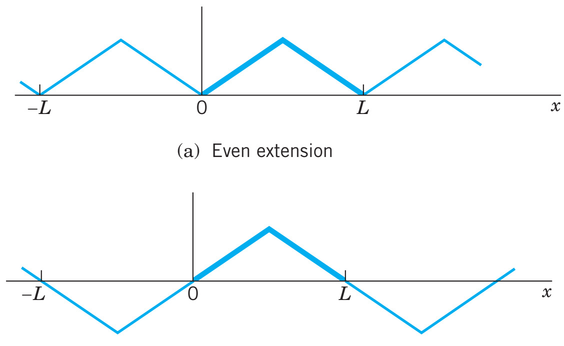
$$b_n = \frac{8k}{n^2\pi^2}\sin\frac{n\pi}{2}. \tag{5}$$

Hence the other half-range expansion of $f(x)$ is (Fig. 272b)

$$f(x) = \frac{8k}{\pi^2}\left(\frac{1}{1^2}\sin\frac{\pi}{L}x - \frac{1}{3^2}\sin\frac{3\pi}{L}x + \frac{1}{5^2}\sin\frac{5\pi}{L}x - + \cdots\right).$$

The series represents the odd periodic extension of $f(x)$, of period $2L$.

Basic applications of these results will be shown in Secs. 12.3 and 12.5. ■



(a) Even extension

(b) Odd extension

Fig. 272. Periodic extensions of $f(x)$ in Example 6

PROBLEM SET 11.2

1–7 EVEN AND ODD FUNCTIONS

Are the following functions even or odd or neither even nor odd?

1. e^x, $e^{-|x|}$, $x^3 \cos nx$, $x^2 \tan \pi x$, $\sinh x - \cosh x$

2. $\sin^2 x$, $\sin(x^2)$, $\ln x$, $x/(x^2+1)$, $x \cot x$

3. Sums and products of even functions

4. Sums and products of odd functions

5. Absolute values of odd functions

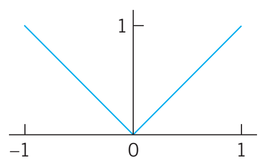
6. Product of an odd times an even function

7. Find all functions that are both even and odd.

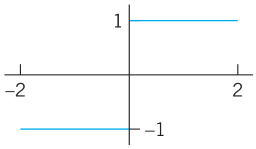
8–17 FOURIER SERIES FOR PERIOD $p = 2L$

Is the given function even or odd or neither even nor odd? Find its Fourier series. Show details of your work.

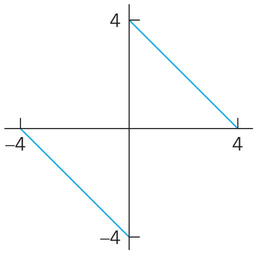
8.



9.



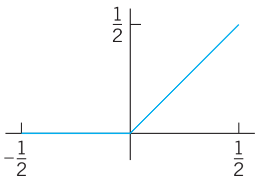
10.



11. $f(x) = x^2 \quad (-1 < x < 1), \quad p = 2$

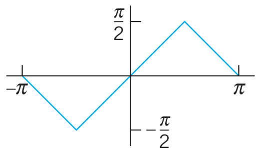
12. $f(x) = 1 - x^2/4 \quad (-2 < x < 2), \quad p = 4$

13.



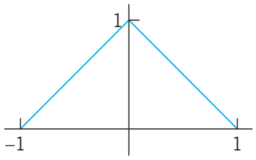
14. $f(x) = \cos \pi x \quad (-\frac{1}{2} < x < \frac{1}{2}), \quad p = 1$

15.



16. $f(x) = x|x| \quad (-1 < x < 1), \quad p = 2$

17.



18. Rectifier. Find the Fourier series of the function obtained by passing the voltage $v(t) = V_0 \cos 100\pi t$ through a half-wave rectifier that clips the negative half-waves.

19. Trigonometric Identities. Show that the familiar identities $\cos^3 x = \frac{3}{4}\cos x + \frac{1}{4}\cos 3x$ and $\sin^3 x = \frac{3}{4}\sin x - \frac{1}{4}\sin 3x$ can be interpreted as Fourier series expansions. Develop $\cos^4 x$.

20. Numeric Values. Using Prob. 11, show that $1 + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{9} + \frac{1}{16} + \cdots = \frac{1}{6}\pi^2$.

21. CAS PROJECT. Fourier Series of 2*L*-Periodic Functions. (a) Write a program for obtaining partial sums of a Fourier series (5).

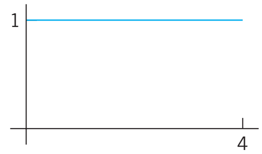
(b) Apply the program to Probs. 8–11, graphing the first few partial sums of each of the four series on common axes. Choose the first five or more partial sums until they approximate the given function reasonably well. Compare and comment.

22. Obtain the Fourier series in Prob. 8 from that in Prob. 17.

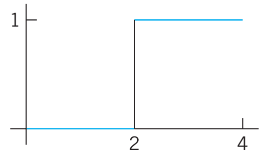
23–29 HALF-RANGE EXPANSIONS

Find **(a)** the Fourier cosine series, **(b)** the Fourier sine series. Sketch $f(x)$ and its two periodic extensions. Show the details.

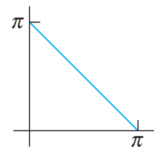
23.



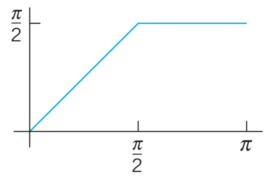
24.



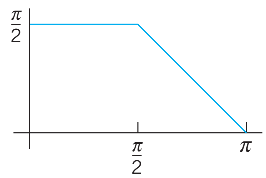
25.



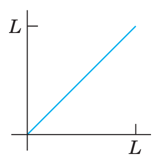
26.



27.



28.



29. $f(x) = \sin x \; (0 < x < \pi)$

30. Obtain the solution to Prob. 26 from that of Prob. 27.

11.3 Forced Oscillations

Fourier series have important applications for both ODEs and PDEs. In this section we shall focus on ODEs and cover similar applications for PDEs in Chap. 12. All these applications will show our indebtedness to Euler's and Fourier's ingenious idea of splitting up periodic functions into the simplest ones possible.

From Sec. 2.8 we know that forced oscillations of a body of mass m on a spring of modulus k are governed by the ODE

$$my'' + cy' + ky = r(t) \tag{1}$$

where $y = y(t)$ is the displacement from rest, c the damping constant, k the spring constant (spring modulus), and $r(t)$ the external force depending on time t. Figure 274 shows the model and Fig. 275 its electrical analog, an RLC-circuit governed by

$$LI'' + RI' + \frac{1}{C}I = E'(t) \qquad \text{(Sec. 2.9).} \tag{1*}$$

We consider (1). If $r(t)$ is a sine or cosine function and if there is damping ($c > 0$), then the steady-state solution is a harmonic oscillation with frequency equal to that of $r(t)$. However, if $r(t)$ is not a pure sine or cosine function but is any other periodic function, then the steady-state solution will be a superposition of harmonic oscillations with frequencies equal to that of $r(t)$ and integer multiples of these frequencies. And if one of these frequencies is close to the (practical) resonant frequency of the vibrating system (see Sec. 2.8), then the corresponding oscillation may be the dominant part of the response of the system to the external force. This is what the use of Fourier series will show us. Of course, this is quite surprising to an observer unfamiliar with Fourier series, which are highly important in the study of vibrating systems and resonance. Let us discuss the entire situation in terms of a typical example.

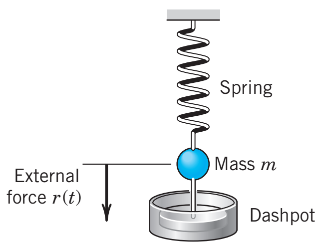


Fig. 274. Vibrating system under consideration

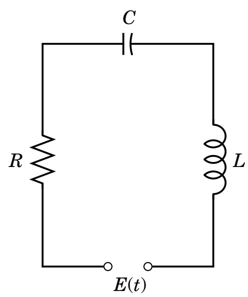


Fig. 275. Electrical analog of the system in Fig. 274 (*RLC-circuit*)

EXAMPLE 1 Forced Oscillations under a Nonsinusoidal Periodic Driving Force

In (1), let $m = 1$ (g), $c = 0.05$ (g/sec), and $k = 25$ (g/sec^2), so that (1) becomes

$$y'' + 0.05y' + 25y = r(t) \tag{2}$$

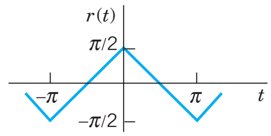


Fig. 276. Force in Example 1

where $r(t)$ is measured in $\mathrm{g \cdot cm/sec^2}$. Let (Fig. 276)

$$r(t) = \begin{cases} t + \dfrac{\pi}{2} & \text{if} \quad -\pi < t < 0, \\ -t + \dfrac{\pi}{2} & \text{if} \quad 0 < t < \pi, \end{cases} \qquad r(t + 2\pi) = r(t).$$

Find the steady-state solution $y(t)$.

Solution. We represent $r(t)$ by a Fourier series, finding

$$r(t) = \frac{4}{\pi}\left(\cos t + \frac{1}{3^2}\cos 3t + \frac{1}{5^2}\cos 5t + \cdots\right). \tag{3}$$

Then we consider the ODE

$$y'' + 0.05y' + 25y = \frac{4}{n^2\pi}\cos nt \qquad (n = 1, 3, \cdots) \tag{4}$$

whose right side is a single term of the series (3). From Sec. 2.8 we know that the steady-state solution $y_n(t)$ of (4) is of the form

$$y_n = A_n \cos nt + B_n \sin nt. \tag{5}$$

By substituting this into (4) we find that

$$A_n = \frac{4(25 - n^2)}{n^2\pi D_n}, \qquad B_n = \frac{0.2}{n\pi D_n}, \qquad \text{where} \qquad D_n = (25 - n^2)^2 + (0.05n)^2. \tag{6}$$

Since the ODE (2) is linear, we may expect the steady-state solution to be

$$y = y_1 + y_3 + y_5 + \cdots \tag{7}$$

where y_n is given by (5) and (6). In fact, this follows readily by substituting (7) into (2) and using the Fourier series of $r(t)$, provided that termwise differentiation of (7) is permissible. (Readers already familiar with the notion of uniform convergence [Sec. 15.5] may prove that (7) may be differentiated term by term.)

From (6) we find that the amplitude of (5) is (a factor $\sqrt{D_n}$ cancels out)

$$C_n = \sqrt{A_n^2 + B_n^2} = \frac{4}{n^2\pi\sqrt{D_n}}.$$

Values of the first few amplitudes are

$$C_1 = 0.0531 \quad C_3 = 0.0088 \quad C_5 = 0.2037 \quad C_7 = 0.0011 \quad C_9 = 0.0003.$$

Figure 277 shows the input (multiplied by 0.1) and the output. For $n = 5$ the quantity D_n is very small, the denominator of C_5 is small, and C_5 is so large that y_5 is the dominating term in (7). Hence the output is almost a harmonic oscillation of five times the frequency of the driving force, a little distorted due to the term y_1, whose amplitude is about 25% of that of y_5. You could make the situation still more extreme by decreasing the damping constant c. Try it. ■

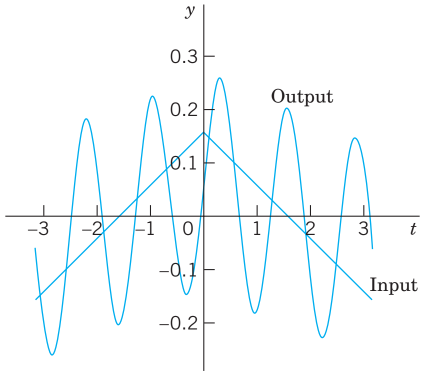


Fig. 277. Input and steady-state output in Example 1

PROBLEM SET 11.3

1. **Coefficients C_n.** Derive the formula for C_n from A_n and B_n.
2. **Change of spring and damping.** In Example 1, what happens to the amplitudes C_n if we take a stiffer spring, say, of $k = 49$? If we increase the damping?
3. **Phase shift.** Explain the role of the B_n's. What happens if we let $c \to 0$?
4. **Differentiation of input.** In Example 1, what happens if we replace $r(t)$ with its derivative, the rectangular wave? What is the ratio of the new C_n to the old ones?
5. **Sign of coefficients.** Some of the A_n in Example 1 are positive, some negative. All B_n are positive. Is this physically understandable?

6–11 GENERAL SOLUTION

Find a general solution of the ODE $y'' + \omega^2 y = r(t)$ with $r(t)$ as given. Show the details of your work.

6. $r(t) = \sin \alpha t + \sin \beta t$, $\omega^2 \neq \alpha^2, \beta^2$
7. $r(t) = \sin t$, $\omega = 0.5, 0.9, 1.1, 1.5, 10$
8. **Rectifier.** $r(t) = \pi/4\,|\cos t|$ if $-\pi < t < \pi$ and $r(t + 2\pi) = r(t)$, $|\omega| \neq 0, 2, 4, \cdots$
9. What kind of solution is excluded in Prob. 8 by $|\omega| \neq 0, 2, 4, \cdots$?
10. **Rectifier.** $r(t) = \pi/4\,|\sin t|$ if $0 < t < 2\pi$ and $r(t + 2\pi) = r(t)$, $|\omega| \neq 0, 2, 4, \cdots$
11. $r(t) = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{if } -\pi < t < 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } 0 < t < \pi, \end{cases}$ $\quad |\omega| \neq 1, 3, 5, \cdots$
12. **CAS Program.** Write a program for solving the ODE just considered and for jointly graphing input and output of an initial value problem involving that ODE. Apply the program to Probs. 7 and 11 with initial values of your choice.

13–16 STEADY-STATE DAMPED OSCILLATIONS

Find the steady-state oscillations of $y'' + cy' + y = r(t)$ with $c > 0$ and $r(t)$ as given. Note that the spring constant is $k = 1$. Show the details. In Probs. 14–16 sketch $r(t)$.

13. $r(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{N} (a_n \cos nt + b_n \sin nt)$
14. $r(t) = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{if } -\pi < t < 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } 0 < t < \pi \end{cases}$ and $r(t + 2\pi) = r(t)$
15. $r(t) = t(\pi^2 - t^2)$ if $-\pi < t < \pi$ and $r(t + 2\pi) = r(t)$
16. $r(t) = \begin{cases} t & \text{if } -\pi/2 < t < \pi/2 \\ \pi - t & \text{if } \pi/2 < t < 3\pi/2 \end{cases}$ and $r(t + 2\pi) = r(t)$

17–19 *RLC*-CIRCUIT

Find the steady-state current $I(t)$ in the *RLC*-circuit in Fig. 275, where $R = 10\ \Omega$, $L = 1$ H, $C = 10^{-1}$ F and with $E(t)$ V as follows and periodic with period 2π. Graph or sketch the first four partial sums. Note that the coefficients of the solution decrease rapidly. *Hint.* Remember that the ODE contains $E'(t)$, not $E(t)$, cf. Sec. 2.9.

17. $E(t) = \begin{cases} -50t^2 & \text{if } -\pi < t < 0 \\ 50t^2 & \text{if } 0 < t < \pi \end{cases}$

18. $E(t) = \begin{cases} 100\,(t - t^2) & \text{if} \quad -\pi < t < 0 \\ 100\,(t + t^2) & \text{if} \quad 0 < t < \pi \end{cases}$

19. $E(t) = 200t(\pi^2 - t^2) \quad (-\pi < t < \pi)$

20. CAS EXPERIMENT. Maximum Output Term. Graph and discuss outputs of $y'' + cy' + ky = r(t)$ with $r(t)$ as in Example 1 for various c and k with emphasis on the maximum C_n and its ratio to the second largest $|C_n|$.

11.4 Approximation by Trigonometric Polynomials

Fourier series play a prominent role not only in differential equations but also in **approximation theory**, an area that is concerned with approximating functions by other functions—usually simpler functions. Here is how Fourier series come into the picture.

Let $f(x)$ be a function on the interval $-\pi \leqq x \leqq \pi$ that can be represented on this interval by a Fourier series. Then the ***N*th partial sum** of the Fourier series

$$f(x) \approx a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} (a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx) \tag{1}$$

is an approximation of the given $f(x)$. In (1) we choose an arbitrary N and keep it fixed. Then we ask whether (1) is the "best" approximation of f by a **trigonometric polynomial of the same degree N**, that is, by a function of the form

$$F(x) = A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} (A_n \cos nx + B_n \sin nx) \qquad (N \text{ fixed}). \tag{2}$$

Here, "best" means that the "error" of the approximation is as small as possible.

Of course we must first define what we mean by the **error** of such an approximation. We could choose the maximum of $|f(x) - F(x)|$. But in connection with Fourier series it is better to choose a definition of error that measures the goodness of agreement between f and F *on the whole interval* $-\pi \leqq x \leqq \pi$. This is preferable since the sum f of a Fourier series may have jumps: F in Fig. 278 is a good overall approximation of f, but the maximum of $|f(x) - F(x)|$ (more precisely, the *supremum*) is large. We choose

$$E = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} (f - F)^2 \, dx. \tag{3}$$

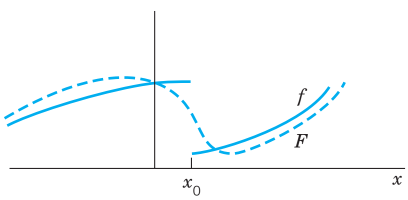


Fig. 278. Error of approximation

This is called the **square error** of F relative to the function f on the interval $-\pi \leqq x \leqq \pi$. Clearly, $E \geqq 0$.

N being fixed, we want to determine the coefficients in (2) such that E is minimum. Since $(f - F)^2 = f^2 - 2fF + F^2$, we have

$$E = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f^2\,dx - 2\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} fF\,dx + \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} F^2\,dx. \tag{4}$$

We square (2), insert it into the last integral in (4), and evaluate the occurring integrals. This gives integrals of $\cos^2 nx$ and $\sin^2 nx$ $(n \geqq 1)$, which equal π, and integrals of $\cos nx$, $\sin nx$, and $(\cos nx)(\sin mx)$, which are zero (just as in Sec. 11.1). Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} F^2\,dx &= \int_{-\pi}^{\pi}\left[A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{N}(A_n \cos nx + B_n \sin nx)\right]^2 dx\\ &= \pi(2A_0^2 + A_1^2 + \cdots + A_N^2 + B_1^2 + \cdots + B_N^2).\end{aligned}$$

We now insert (2) into the integral of fF in (4). This gives integrals of $f \cos nx$ as well as $f \sin nx$, just as in Euler's formulas, Sec. 11.1, for a_n and b_n (each multiplied by A_n or B_n). Hence

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} fF\,dx = \pi(2A_0a_0 + A_1a_1 + \cdots + A_Na_N + B_1b_1 + \cdots + B_Nb_N).$$

With these expressions, (4) becomes

$$\begin{aligned}E = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f^2\,dx &- 2\pi\left[2A_0a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{N}(A_na_n + B_nb_n)\right]\\ &+ \pi\left[2A_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{N}(A_n^2 + B_n^2)\right].\end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

We now take $A_n = a_n$ and $B_n = b_n$ in (2). Then in (5) the second line cancels half of the integral-free expression in the first line. Hence for this choice of the coefficients of F the square error, call it E^*, is

$$E^* = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f^2\,dx - \pi\left[2a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{N}(a_n^2 + b_n^2)\right]. \tag{6}$$

We finally subtract (6) from (5). Then the integrals drop out and we get terms $A_n^2 - 2A_na_n + a_n^2 = (A_n - an)^2$ and similar terms $(B_n - b_n)^2$:

$$E - E^* = \pi\left\{2(A_0 - a_0)^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{N}[(A_n - a_n)^2 + (B_n - b_n)^2]\right\}.$$

Since the sum of squares of real numbers on the right cannot be negative,

$$E - E^* \geqq 0, \qquad \text{thus} \qquad E \geqq E^*,$$

and $E = E^*$ if and only if $A_0 = a_0, \cdots, B_N = b_N$. This proves the following fundamental minimum property of the partial sums of Fourier series.

THEOREM 1

Minimum Square Error

The square error of F in (2) (with fixed N) relative to f on the interval $-\pi \leqq x \leqq \pi$ is minimum if and only if the coefficients of F in (2) are the Fourier coefficients of f. This minimum value E^* is given by (6).

From (6) we see that E^* cannot increase as N increases, but may decrease. Hence *with increasing N the partial sums of the Fourier series of f yield better and better approximations to f*, considered from the viewpoint of the square error.

Since $E^* \geqq 0$ and (6) holds for every N, we obtain from (6) the important **Bessel's inequality**

$$2a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n^2 + b_n^2) \leqq \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)^2 \, dx \tag{7}$$

for the Fourier coefficients of any function f for which integral on the right exists. (For F. W. Bessel see Sec. 5.5.)

It can be shown (see [C12] in App. 1) that for such a function f, **Parseval's theorem** holds; that is, formula (7) holds with the equality sign, so that it becomes **Parseval's identity**[3]

$$2a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n^2 + b_n^2) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)^2 \, dx. \tag{8}$$

EXAMPLE 1 **Minimum Square Error for the Sawtooth Wave**

Compute the minimum square error E^* of $F(x)$ with $N = 1, 2, \cdots, 10, 20, \cdots, 100$ and 1000 relative to

$$f(x) = x + \pi \qquad (-\pi < x < \pi)$$

on the interval $-\pi \leqq x \leqq \pi$.

Solution. $F(x) = \pi + 2\left(\sin x - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2x + \frac{1}{3}\sin 3x - + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^{N+1}}{N}\sin Nx\right)$ by Example 3 in Sec. 11.3. From this and (6),

$$E^* = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} (x+\pi)^2 \, dx - \pi\left(2\pi^2 + 4\sum_{n=1}^{N} \frac{1}{n^2}\right).$$

Numeric values are:

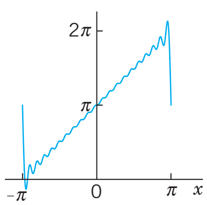


Fig. 279. F with $N = 20$ in Example 1

N	E^*	N	E^*	N	E^*	N	E^*
1	8.1045	6	1.9295	20	0.6129	70	0.1782
2	4.9629	7	1.6730	30	0.4120	80	0.1561
3	3.5666	8	1.4767	40	0.3103	90	0.1389
4	2.7812	9	1.3216	50	0.2488	100	0.1250
5	2.2786	10	1.1959	60	0.2077	1000	0.0126

[3]MARC ANTOINE PARSEVAL (1755–1836), French mathematician. A physical interpretation of the identity follows in the next section.

$F = S_1, S_2, S_3$ are shown in Fig. 269 in Sec. 11.2, and $F = S_{20}$ is shown in Fig. 279. Although $|f(x) - F(x)|$ is large at $\pm\pi$ (how large?), where f is discontinuous, F approximates f quite well on the whole interval, except near $\pm\pi$, where "waves" remain owing to the "Gibbs phenomenon," which we shall discuss in the next section.

Can you think of functions f for which E^* decreases more quickly with increasing N? ■

PROBLEM SET 11.4

1. **CAS Problem.** Do the numeric and graphic work in Example 1 in the text.

2–5 MINIMUM SQUARE ERROR

Find the trigonometric polynomial $F(x)$ of the form (2) for which the square error with respect to the given $f(x)$ on the interval $-\pi < x < \pi$ is minimum. Compute the minimum value for $N = 1, 2, \cdots, 5$ (or also for larger values if you have a CAS).

2. $f(x) = x \quad (-\pi < x < \pi)$
3. $f(x) = |x| \quad (-\pi < x < \pi)$
4. $f(x) = x^2 \quad (-\pi < x < \pi)$
5. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{if} \quad -\pi < x < 0 \\ 1 & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < \pi \end{cases}$
6. Why are the square errors in Prob. 5 substantially larger than in Prob. 3?
7. $f(x) = x^3 \quad (-\pi < x < \pi)$
8. $f(x) = |\sin x| \quad (-\pi < x < \pi)$, full-wave rectifier
9. **Monotonicity.** Show that the minimum square error (6) is a monotone decreasing function of N. How can you use this in practice?
10. **CAS EXPERIMENT. Size and Decrease of E^*.** Compare the size of the minimum square error E^* for functions of your choice. Find experimentally the factors on which the decrease of E^* with N depends. For each function considered find the smallest N such that $E^* < 0.1$.

11–15 PARSEVALS'S IDENTITY

Using (8), prove that the series has the indicated sum. Compute the first few partial sums to see that the convergence is rapid.

11. $1 + \dfrac{1}{3^2} + \dfrac{1}{5^2} + \cdots = \dfrac{\pi^2}{8} = 1.233700550$

    Use Example 1 in Sec. 11.1.

12. $1 + \dfrac{1}{2^4} + \dfrac{1}{3^4} + \cdots = \dfrac{\pi^4}{90} = 1.082323234$

    Use Prob. 14 in Sec. 11.1.

13. $1 + \dfrac{1}{3^4} + \dfrac{1}{5^4} + \dfrac{1}{7^4} + \cdots = \dfrac{\pi^4}{96} = 1.014678032$

    Use Prob. 17 in Sec. 11.1.

14. $\displaystyle\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos^4 x \, dx = \frac{3\pi}{4}$

15. $\displaystyle\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos^6 x \, dx = \frac{5\pi}{8}$

11.5 Sturm–Liouville Problems. Orthogonal Functions

The idea of the Fourier series was to represent general periodic functions in terms of cosines and sines. The latter formed a *trigonometric system.* This trigonometric system has the desirable property of orthogonality which allows us to compute the coefficient of the Fourier series by the Euler formulas.

The question then arises, can this approach be generalized? That is, can we replace the trigonometric system of Sec. 11.1 by other *orthogonal systems* (*sets of other orthogonal functions*)? The answer is "yes" and will lead to generalized Fourier series, including the Fourier–Legendre series and the Fourier–Bessel series in Sec. 11.6.

To prepare for this generalization, we first have to introduce the concept of a Sturm–Liouville Problem. (The motivation for this approach will become clear as you read on.) Consider a second-order ODE of the form

(1) $$[p(x)y']' + [q(x) + \lambda r(x)]y = 0$$

on some interval $a \leqq x \leqq b$, satisfying conditions of the form

(2)
$$\text{(a)} \quad k_1 y + k_2 y' = 0 \quad \text{at } x = a$$
$$\text{(b)} \quad l_1 y + l_2 y' = 0 \quad \text{at } x = b.$$

Here λ is a parameter, and k_1, k_2, l_1, l_2 are given real constants. Furthermore, at least one of each constant in each condition (2) must be different from zero. (We will see in Example 1 that, if $p(x) = r(x) = 1$ and $q(x) = 0$, then $\sin\sqrt{\lambda}x$ and $\cos\sqrt{\lambda}x$ satisfy (1) and constants can be found to satisfy (2).) Equation (1) is known as a **Sturm–Liouville equation**.[4] Together with conditions 2(a), 2(b) it is know as the **Sturm–Liouville problem**. It is an example of a boundary value problem.

A **boundary value problem** consists of an ODE and given boundary conditions referring to the two boundary points (endpoints) $x = a$ and $x = b$ of a given interval $a \leqq x \leqq b$.

The goal is to solve these type of problems. To do so, we have to consider

Eigenvalues, Eigenfunctions

Clearly, $y \equiv 0$ is a solution—the "**trivial solution**"—of the problem (1), (2) for any λ because (1) is homogeneous and (2) has zeros on the right. This is of no interest. We want to find **eigenfunctions** $y(x)$, that is, solutions of (1) satisfying (2) without being identically zero. We call a number λ for which an eigenfunction exists an **eigenvalue** of the Sturm–Liouville problem (1), (2).

Many important ODEs in engineering can be written as Sturm–Liouville equations. The following example serves as a case in point.

EXAMPLE 1 Trigonometric Functions as Eigenfunctions. Vibrating String

Find the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the Sturm–Liouville problem

(3) $$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 0.$$

This problem arises, for instance, if an elastic string (a violin string, for example) is stretched a little and fixed at its ends $x = 0$ and $x = \pi$ and then allowed to vibrate. Then $y(x)$ is the "space function" of the deflection $u(x, t)$ of the string, assumed in the form $u(x, t) = y(x)w(t)$, where t is time. (This model will be discussed in great detail in Secs, 12.2–12.4.)

Solution. From (1) nad (2) we see that $p = 1, q = 0, r = 1$ in (1), and $a = 0, b = \pi, k_1 = l_1 = 1$, $k_2 = l_2 = 0$ in (2). For negative $\lambda = -\nu^2$ a general solution of the ODE in (3) is $y(x) = c_1 e^{\nu x} + c_2 e^{-\nu x}$. From the boundary conditions we obtain $c_1 = c_2 = 0$, so that $y \equiv 0$, which is not an eigenfunction. For $\lambda = 0$ the situation is similar. For positive $\lambda = \nu^2$ a general solution is

$$y(x) = A \cos \nu x + B \sin \nu x.$$

[4]JACQUES CHARLES FRANÇOIS STURM (1803–1855) was born and studied in Switzerland and then moved to Paris, where he later became the successor of Poisson in the chair of mechanics at the Sorbonne (the University of Paris).

JOSEPH LIOUVILLE (1809–1882), French mathematician and professor in Paris, contributed to various fields in mathematics and is particularly known by his important work in complex analysis (Liouville's theorem; Sec. 14.4), special functions, differential geometry, and number theory.

From the first boundary condition we obtain $y(0) = A = 0$. The second boundary condition then yields

$$y(\pi) = B \sin \nu\pi = 0, \qquad \text{thus} \qquad \nu = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \cdots.$$

For $\nu = 0$ we have $y \equiv 0$. For $\lambda = \nu^2 = 1, 4, 9, 16, \cdots$, taking $B = 1$, we obtain

$$y(x) = \sin \nu x \qquad (\nu = \sqrt{\lambda} = 1, 2, \cdots).$$

Hence the eigenvalues of the problem are $\lambda = \nu^2$, where $\nu = 1, 2, \cdots$, and corresponding eigenfunctions are $y(x) = \sin \nu x$, where $\nu = 1, 2 \cdots$.

Note that the solution to this problem is precisely the trigonometric system of the Fourier series considered earlier. It can be shown that, under rather general conditions on the functions p, q, r in (1), the Sturm–Liouville problem (1), (2) has infinitely many eigenvalues. The corresponding rather complicated theory can be found in Ref. [All] listed in App. 1.

Furthermore, if p, q, r, and p' in (1) are real-valued and continuous on the interval $a \leqq x \leqq b$ and r is positive throughout that interval (or negative throughout that interval), then all the eigenvalues of the Sturm–Liouville problem (1), (2) are real. (Proof in App. 4.) This is what the engineer would expect since eigenvalues are often related to frequencies, energies, or other physical quantities that must be real.

The most remarkable and important property of eigenfunctions of Sturm–Liouville problems is their ***orthogonality***, which will be crucial in series developments in terms of eigenfunctions, as we shall see in the next section. This suggests that we should next consider orthogonal functions.

Orthogonal Functions

Functions $y_1(x), y_2(x), \cdots$ defined on some interval $a \leqq x \leqq b$ are called **orthogonal** on this interval with respect to the **weight function** $r(x) > 0$ if for all m and all n different from m,

$$(y_m, y_n) = \int_a^b r(x) y_m(x) y_n(x)\, dx = 0 \qquad (m \neq n). \tag{4}$$

(y_m, y_n) is a ***standard notation*** for this integral. **The norm** $\|y_m\|$ of y_m is defined by

$$\|y_m\| = \sqrt{(y_m, y_m)} = \sqrt{\int_a^b r(x) y_m^2(x)\, dx}. \tag{5}$$

Note that this is the square root of the integral in (4) with $n = m$.

The functions $y_1, y_2, \cdots$ are called **orthonormal** on $a \leqq x \leqq b$ if they are orthogonal on this interval and all have norm 1. Then we can write (4), (5) jointly by using the **Kronecker symbol**[5] δ_{mn}, namely,

$$(y_m, y_n) = \int_a^b r(x) y_m(x) y_n(x)\, dx = \delta_{mn} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if} \quad m \neq n \\ 1 & \text{if} \quad m = n. \end{cases}$$

[5]LEOPOLD KRONECKER (1823–1891). German mathematician at Berlin University, who made important contributions to algebra, group theory, and number theory.

If $r(x) = 1$, we more briefly call the functions *orthogonal* instead of orthogonal with respect to $r(x) = 1$; similarly for orthognormality. Then

$$(y_m, y_n) = \int_a^b y_m(x) y_n(x)\, dx = 0 \quad (m \neq n), \qquad \|y_m\| = \sqrt{(y_m, y_n)} = \sqrt{\int_a^b y_m^2(x)\, dx}.$$

The next example serves as an illustration of the material on orthogonal functions just discussed.

EXAMPLE 2 **Orthogonal Functions. Orthonormal Functions. Notation**

The functions $y_m(x) = \sin mx$, $m = 1, 2, \cdots$ form an orthogonal set on the interval $-\pi \leqq x \leqq \pi$, because for $m \neq n$ we obtain by integration [see (11) in App. A3.1]

$$(y_m, y_n) = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin mx \sin nx\, dx = \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos (m - n)x\, dx - \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos (m + n)x\, dx = 0, \quad (m \neq n).$$

The norm $\| y_m \| = \sqrt{(y_m, y_m)}$ equals $\sqrt{\pi}$ because

$$\|y_m\|^2 = (y_m, y_m) = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin^2 mx\, dx = \pi \qquad (m = 1, 2, \cdots)$$

Hence the corresponding orthonormal set, obtained by division by the norm, is

$$\frac{\sin x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \quad \frac{\sin 2x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \quad \frac{\sin 3x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \quad \cdots.$$

Theorem 1 shows that for any Sturm–Liouville problem, the eigenfunctions associated with these problems are orthogonal. This means, in practice, if we can formulate a problem as a Sturm–Liouville problem, then by this theorem we are guaranteed orthogonality.

THEOREM 1 **Orthogonality of Eigenfunctions of Sturm–Liouville Problems**

Suppose that the functions p, q, r, and p' in the Sturm–Liouville equation (1) *are real-valued and continuous and $r(x) > 0$ on the interval $a \leqq x \leqq b$. Let $y_m(x)$ and $y_n(x)$ be eigenfunctions of the Sturm–Liouville problem* (1), (2) *that correspond to different eigenvalues λ_m and λ_n, respectively. Then y_m, y_n are orthogonal on that interval with respect to the weight function r, that is,*

$$(y_m, y_n) = \int_a^b r(x) y_m(x) y_n(x)\, dx = 0 \qquad (m \neq n). \tag{6}$$

If $p(a) = 0$, then (2a) *can be dropped from the problem. If $p(b) = 0$, then* (2b) can be dropped. [It is then required that y and y' remain bounded at such a point, and the problem is called **singular**, as opposed to a **regular problem** in which (2) is used.]

If $p(a) = p(b)$, then (2) *can be replaced by the* "**periodic boundary conditions**"

$$y(a) = y(b), \qquad y'(a) = y'(b). \tag{7}$$

The boundary value problem consisting of the Sturm–Liouville equation (1) and the periodic boundary conditions (7) is called a **periodic Sturm–Liouville problem**.

PROOF By assumption, y_m and y_n satisfy the Sturm–Liouville equations

$$(py_m')' + (q + \lambda_m r)y_m = 0$$
$$(py_n')' + (q + \lambda_n r)y_n = 0$$

respectively. We multiply the first equation by y_n, the second by $-y_m$, and add,

$$(\lambda_m - \lambda_n)ry_m y_n = y_m(py_n')' - y_n(py_m')' = [(py_n')y_m - [(py_m')y_n]'$$

where the last equality can be readily verified by performing the indicated differentiation of the last expression in brackets. This expression is continuous on $a \leqq x \leqq b$ since p and p' are continuous by assumption and y_m, y_n are solutions of (1). Integrating over x from a to b, we thus obtain

$$(\lambda_m - \lambda_n)\int_a^b ry_m y_n \, dx = [p(y_n' y_m - y_m' y_n)]_a^b \qquad (a < b). \tag{8}$$

The expression on the right equals the sum of the subsequent Lines 1 and 2,

$$\begin{aligned} &p(b)[y_n'(b)y_m(b) - y_m'(b)y_n(b)] \qquad &\text{(Line 1)} \\ &-p(a)[y_n'(a)y_m(a) - y_m'(a)y_n(a)] \qquad &\text{(Line 2).} \end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

Hence if (9) is zero, (8) with $\lambda_m - \lambda_n \neq 0$ implies the orthogonality (6). Accordingly, we have to show that (9) is zero, using the boundary conditions (2) as needed.

Case 1. $\boldsymbol{p(a) = p(b) = 0.}$ Clearly, (9) is zero, and (2) is not needed.
Case 2. $\boldsymbol{p(a) \neq 0, p(b) = 0.}$ Line 1 of (9) is zero. Consider Line 2. From (2a) we have

$$k_1 y_n(a) + k_2 y_n'(a) = 0,$$
$$k_1 y_m(a) + k_2 y_m'(a) = 0.$$

Let $k_2 \neq 0$. We multiply the first equation by $y_m(a)$, the last by $-y_n(a)$ and add,

$$k_2[y_n'(a)y_m(a) - y_m'(a)y_n(a)] = 0.$$

This is k_2 times Line 2 of (9), which thus is zero since $k_2 \neq 0$. If $k_2 = 0$, then $k_1 \neq 0$ by assumption, and the argument of proof is similar.

Case 3. $\boldsymbol{p(a) = 0, p(b) \neq 0.}$ Line 2 of (9) is zero. From (2b) it follows that Line 1 of (9) is zero; this is similar to Case 2.
Case 4. $\boldsymbol{p(a) \neq 0, p(b) \neq 0.}$ We use both (2a) and (2b) and proceed as in Cases 2 and 3.
Case 5. $\boldsymbol{p(a) = p(b).}$ Then (9) becomes

$$p(b)[y_n'(b)y_m(b) - y_m'(b)y_n(b) - y_n'(a)y_m(a) + y_m'(a)y_n(a)].$$

The expression in brackets $[\cdots]$ is zero, either by (2) used as before, or more directly by (7). Hence in this case, (7) can be used instead of (2), as claimed. This completes the proof of Theorem 1. ■

EXAMPLE 3 **Application of Theorem 1. Vibrating String**

The ODE in Example 1 is a Sturm–Liouville equation with $p = 1$, $q = 0$, and $r = 1$. From Theorem 1 it follows that the eigenfunctions $y_m = \sin mx$ $(m = 1, 2, \cdots)$ are orthogonal on the interval $0 \leqq x \leqq \pi$. ■

Example 3 confirms, from this new perspective, that the trigonometric system underlying the Fourier series is orthogonal, as we knew from Sec. 11.1.

EXAMPLE 4 Application of Theorem 1. Orthogonlity of the Legendre Polynomials

Legendre's equation $(1 - x^2)y'' - 2xy' + n(n + 1)y = 0$ may be written

$$[(1 - x^2)y']' + \lambda y = 0 \qquad \lambda = n(n + 1).$$

Hence, this is a Sturm–Liouville equation (1) with $p = 1 - x^2$, $q = 0$, and $r = 1$. Since $p(-1) = p(1) = 0$, we need no boundary conditions, but have a "***singular*** ***Sturm–Liouville problem***" on the interval $-1 \leqq x \leqq 1$. We know that for $n = 0, 1, \cdots$, hence $\lambda = 0, 1 \cdot 2, 2 \cdot 3, \cdots$, the Legendre polynomials $P_n(x)$ are solutions of the problem. Hence these are the eigenfunctions. From Theorem 1 it follows that they are orthogonal on that interval, that is,

$$\int_{-1}^{1} P_m(x)P_n(x)\, dx = 0 \qquad (m \neq n). \tag{10}$$

What we have seen is that the trigonometric system, underlying the Fourier series, is a solution to a Sturm–Liouville problem, as shown in Example 1, and that this trigonometric system is orthogonal, which we knew from Sec. 11.1 and confirmed in Example 3.

PROBLEM SET 11.5

1. **Proof of Theorem 1.** Carry out the details in Cases 3 and 4.

2–6 ORTHOGONALITY

2. **Normalization of eigenfunctions** y_m of (1), (2) means that we multiply y_m by a nonzero constant c_m such that $c_m y_m$ has norm 1. Show that $z_m = cy_m$ with *any* $c \neq 0$ is an eigenfunction for the eigenvalue corresponding to y_m.
3. **Change of x.** Show that if the functions $y_0(x), y_1(x), \cdots$ form an orthogonal set on an interval $a \leqq x \leqq b$ (with $r(x) = 1$), then the functions $y_0(ct + k), y_1(ct + k), \cdots, c > 0$, form an orthogonal set on the interval $(a - k)/c \leqq t \leqq (b - k)/c$.
4. **Change of x.** Using Prob. 3, derive the orthogonality of $1, \cos \pi x, \sin \pi x, \cos 2\pi x, \sin 2\pi x, \cdots$ on $-1 \leqq x \leqq 1$ $(r(x) = 1)$ from that of $1, \cos x, \sin x, \cos 2x, \sin 2x, \cdots$ on $-\pi \leqq x \leqq \pi$.
5. **Legendre polynomials.** Show that the functions $P_n(\cos \theta)$, $n = 0, 1, \cdots$, from an orthogonal set on the interval $0 \leqq \theta \leqq \pi$ with respect to the weight function $\sin \theta$.
6. **Tranformation to Sturm–Liouville form.** Show that $y'' + fy' + (g + \lambda h)\, y = 0$ takes the form (1) if you set $p = \exp(\int f\, dx)$, $q = pg$, $r = hp$. Why would you do such a transformation?

7–15 STURM–LIOUVILLE PROBLEMS

Find the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions. Verify orthogonality. Start by writing the ODE in the form (1), using Prob. 6. Show details of your work.

7. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(10) = 0$
8. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(L) = 0$
9. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(L) = 0$
10. $y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = y(1), \quad y'(0) = y'(1)$
11. $(y'/x)' + (\lambda + 1)y/x^3 = 0, \quad y(1) = 0, \quad y(e^{\pi}) = 0.$ (Set $x = e^t$.)
12. $y'' - 2y' + (\lambda + 1)y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$
13. $y'' + 8y' + (\lambda + 16)y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 0$
14. **TEAM PROJECT. Special Functions. Orthogonal polynomials** play a great role in applications. For this reason, Legendre polynomials and various other orthogonal polynomials have been studied extensively; see Refs. [GenRef1], [GenRef10] in App. 1. Consider some of the most important ones as follows.

(a) Chebyshev polynomials[6] of the first and second kind are defined by

$$T_n(x) = \cos(n \arccos x)$$
$$U_n(x) = \frac{\sin[(n+1)\arccos x]}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$$

respectively, where $n = 0, 1, \cdots$. Show that

$$T_0 = 1, \qquad T_1(x) = x, \qquad T_2(x) = 2x^2 - 1,$$
$$T_3(x) = 4x^3 - 3x,$$
$$U_0 = 1, \qquad U_1(x) = 2x, \qquad U_2(x) = 4x^2 - 1,$$
$$U_3(x) = 8x^3 - 4x.$$

Show that the Chebyshev polynomials $T_n(x)$ are orthogonal on the interval $-1 \leqq x \leqq 1$ with respect to the weight function $r(x) = 1/\sqrt{1-x^2}$. (*Hint.* To evaluate the integral, set $\arccos x = \theta$.) Verify that $T_n(x)$, $n = 0, 1, 2, 3$, satisfy the **Chebyshev equation**

$$(1-x^2)y'' - xy' + n^2y = 0.$$

(b) Orthogonality on an infinite interval: Laguerre polynomials[7] are defined by $L_0 = 1$, and

$$L_n(x) = \frac{e^x}{n!}\frac{d^n(x^ne^{-x})}{dx^n}, \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots.$$

Show that

$$L_n(x) = 1 - x, \qquad L_2(x) = 1 - 2x + x^2/2,$$
$$L_3(x) = 1 - 3x + 3x^2/2 - x^3/6.$$

Prove that the Laguerre polynomials are orthogonal on the positive axis $0 \leqq x < \infty$ with respect to the weight function $r(x) = e^{-x}$. *Hint.* Since the highest power in L_m is x^m, it suffices to show that $\int e^{-x}x^kL_n\,dx = 0$ for $k < n$. Do this by k integrations by parts.

11.6 Orthogonal Series. Generalized Fourier Series

Fourier series are made up of the trigonometric system (Sec. 11.1), which is orthogonal, and orthogonality was essential in obtaining the Euler formulas for the Fourier coefficients. Orthogonality will also give us coefficient formulas for the desired generalized Fourier series, including the Fourier–Legendre series and the Fourier–Bessel series. This generalization is as follows.

Let $y_0, y_1, y_2, \cdots$ be orthogonal with respect to a weight function $r(x)$ on an interval $a \leqq x \leqq b$, and let $f(x)$ be a function that can be represented by a convergent series

$$f(x) = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m y_m(x) = a_0 y_0(x) + a_1 y_1(x) + \cdots. \tag{1}$$

This is called an **orthogonal series**, **orthogonal expansion**, or **generalized Fourier series**. If the y_m are the eigenfunctions of a Sturm–Liouville problem, we call (1) an **eigenfunction expansion**. In (1) we use again m for summation since n will be used as a fixed order of Bessel functions.

Given $f(x)$, we have to determine the coefficients in (1), called the **Fourier constants** *of $f(x)$ with respect to* $y_0, y_1, \cdots$. Because of the orthogonality, this is simple. Similarly to Sec. 11.1, we multiply both sides of (1) by $r(x)y_n(x)$ (n ***fixed***) and then integrate on

[6] PAFNUTI CHEBYSHEV (1821–1894), Russian mathematician, is known for his work in approximation theory and the theory of numbers. Another transliteration of the name is TCHEBICHEF.

[7] EDMOND LAGUERRE (1834–1886), French mathematician, who did research work in geometry and in the theory of infinite series.

both sides from a to b. We assume that term-by-term integration is permissible. (This is justified, for instance, in the case of "uniform convergence," as is shown in Sec. 15.5.) Then we obtain

$$(f, y_n) = \int_a^b r f y_n \, dx = \int_a^b r\left(\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m y_m\right) y_n \, dx = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m \int_a^b r y_m y_n \, dx = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m (y_m, y_n).$$

Because of the orthogonality all the integrals on the right are zero, except when $m = n$. Hence the whole infinite series reduces to the single term

$$a_n(y_n, y_n) = a_n \|y_n\|^2. \qquad \text{Thus} \qquad (f, y_n) = a_n \|y_n\|^2.$$

Assuming that all the functions y_n have nonzero norm, we can divide by $\|y_n\|^2$; writing again m for n, to be in agreement with (1), we get the desired formula for the Fourier constants

(2)
$$a_m = \frac{(f, y_m)}{\|y_m\|^2} = \frac{1}{\|y_m\|^2} \int_a^b r(x) f(x) y_m(x) \, dx \qquad (n = 0, 1, \cdots).$$

This formula generalizes the Euler formulas (6) in Sec. 11.1 as well as the principle of their derivation, namely, by orthogonality.

EXAMPLE 1 Fourier–Legendre Series

A **Fourier–Legendre series** is an eigenfunction expansion

$$f(x) = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m P_m(x) = a_0 P_0 + a_1 P_1(x) + a_2 P_2(x) + \cdots = a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 (\tfrac{3}{2} x^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}) + \cdots$$

in terms of Legendre polynomials (Sec. 5.3). The latter are the eigenfunctions of the Sturm–Liouville problem in Example 4 of Sec. 11.5 on the interval $-1 \leqq x \leqq 1$. We have $r(x) = 1$ for Legendre's equation, and (2) gives

(3)
$$a_m = \frac{2m + 1}{2} \int_{-1}^{1} f(x) P_m(x) \, dx, \qquad m = 0, 1, \cdots$$

because the norm is

(4)
$$\|P_m\| = \sqrt{\int_{-1}^{1} P_m(x)^2 \, dx} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{2m + 1}} \qquad (m = 0, 1, \cdots)$$

as we state without proof. The proof of (4) is tricky; it uses Rodrigues's formula in Problem Set 5.2 and a reduction of the resulting integral to a quotient of gamma functions.

For instance, let $f(x) = \sin \pi x$. Then we obtain the coefficients

$$a_m = \frac{2m + 1}{2} \int_{-1}^{1} (\sin \pi x) P_m(x) \, dx, \qquad \text{thus} \qquad a_1 = \frac{3}{2} \int_{-1}^{1} x \sin \pi x \, dx = \frac{3}{\pi} = 0.95493, \qquad \text{etc.}$$

Hence the Fourier–Legendre series of $\sin \pi x$ is

$$\sin \pi x = 0.95493P_1(x) - 1.15824P_3(x) + 0.21929P_5(x) - 0.01664P_7(x) + 0.00068P_9(x) - 0.00002P_{11}(x) + \cdots.$$

The coefficient of P_{13} is about $3 \cdot 10^{-7}$. The sum of the first three nonzero terms gives a curve that practically coincides with the sine curve. Can you see why the even-numbered coefficients are zero? Why a_3 is the absolutely biggest coefficient? ■

EXAMPLE 2 **Fourier–Bessel Series**

These series model vibrating membranes (Sec. 12.9) and other physical systems of circular symmetry. We derive these series in three steps.

***Step 1.* Bessel's equation as a Sturm–Liouville equation.** The Bessel function $J_n(x)$ with fixed integer $n \geqq 0$ satisfies Bessel's equation (Sec. 5.5)

$$\tilde{x}^2 \ddot{J}_n(\tilde{x}) + \tilde{x}\dot{J}_n(\tilde{x}) + (\tilde{x}^2 - n^2)J_n(\tilde{x}) = 0$$

where $\dot{J}_n = dJ_n/d\tilde{x}$ and $\ddot{J}_n = d^2J_n/d\tilde{x}^2$. We set $\tilde{x} = kx$. Then $x = \tilde{x}/k$ and by the chain rule, $\dot{J}_n = dJ_n/d\tilde{x} = (dJ_n/dx)/k$ and $\ddot{J}_n = J_n''/k^2$. In the first two terms of Bessel's equation, k^2 and k drop out and we obtain

$$x^2 J_n''(kx) + xJ_n'(kx) + (k^2x^2 - n^2)J_n(kx) = 0.$$

Dividing by x and using $(xJ_n'(kx))' = xJ_n''(kx) + J_n'(kx)$ gives the Sturm–Liouville equation

$$[xJ_n'(kx)]' + \left(-\frac{n^2}{x} + \lambda x\right)J_n(kx) = 0 \qquad \lambda = k^2 \tag{5}$$

with $p(x) = x$, $q(x) = -n^2/x$, $r(x) = x$, and parameter $\lambda = k^2$. Since $p(0) = 0$, Theorem 1 in Sec. 11.5 implies orthogonality on an interval $0 \leqq x \leqq R$ (R given, fixed) of those solutions $J_n(kx)$ that are zero at $x = R$, that is,

$$J_n(kR) = 0 \qquad (n \text{ fixed}). \tag{6}$$

Note that $q(x) = -n^2/x$ is discontinuous at 0, but this does not affect the proof of Theorem 1.

***Step 2.* Orthogonality.** It can be shown (see Ref. [A13]) that $J_n(\tilde{x})$ has infinitely many zeros, say, $\tilde{x} = a_{n,1} < a_{n,2} < \cdots$ (see Fig. 110 in Sec. 5.4 for $n = 0$ and 1). Hence we must have

$$kR = \alpha_{n,m} \qquad \text{thus} \qquad k_{n,m} = \alpha_{n,m}/R \qquad (m = 1, 2, \cdots). \tag{7}$$

This proves the following orthogonality property.

THEOREM 1

Orthogonality of Bessel Functions

For each fixed nonnegative integer n the sequence of Bessel functions of the first kind $J_n(k_{n,1}x)$, $J_n(k_{n,2}x)$, $\cdots$ with $k_{n,m}$ as in (7) forms an orthogonal set on the interval $0 \leqq x \leqq R$ with respect to the weight function $r(x) = x$, that is,

$$\int_0^R xJ_n(k_{n,m}x)J_n(k_{n,j}x)\,dx = 0 \qquad (j \neq m,\ n \text{ fixed}). \tag{8}$$

Hence we have obtained ***infinitely many orthogonal sets*** of Bessel functions, one for each of $J_0, J_1, J_2, \cdots$. Each set is orthogonal on an interval $0 \leqq x \leqq R$ with a fixed positive R of our choice and with respect to the weight x. The orthogonal set for J_n is $J_n(k_{n,1}x), J_n(k_{n,2}x), J_n(k_{n,3}x), \cdots$, where n is *fixed* and $k_{n,m}$ is given by (7).

Step 3. **Fourier–Bessel series.** The Fourier–Bessel series corresponding to J_n (n fixed) is

$$f(x) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} a_m J_n(k_{n,m}x) = a_1 J_n(k_{n,1}x) + a_2 J_n(k_{n,2}x) + a_3 J_n(k_{n,3}x) + \cdots \qquad (n \text{ fixed}). \tag{9}$$

The coefficients are (with $\alpha_{n,m} = k_{n,m}R$)

$$a_m = \frac{2}{R^2 J_{n+1}^2(\alpha_{n,m})} \int_0^R x\, f(x)\, J_n(k_{n,m}x)\, dx, \qquad m = 1, 2, \cdots \tag{10}$$

because the square of the norm is

$$\|J_n(k_{n,m}x)\|^2 = \int_0^R x J_n^2(k_{n,m}x)\, dx = \frac{R^2}{2} J_{n+1}^2(k_{n,m}R) \tag{11}$$

as we state without proof (which is tricky; see the discussion beginning on p. 576 of [A13]). ■

EXAMPLE 3 Special Fourier–Bessel Series

For instance, let us consider $f(x) = 1 - x^2$ and take $R = 1$ and $n = 0$ in the series (9), simply writing λ for $\alpha_{0,m}$. Then $k_{n,m} = \alpha_{0,m} = \lambda = 2.405, 5.520, 8.654, 11.792$, etc. (use a CAS or Table A1 in App. 5). Next we calculate the coefficients a_m by (10)

$$a_m = \frac{2}{J_1^2(\lambda)} \int_0^1 x(1 - x^2) J_0(\lambda x)\, dx.$$

This can be integrated by a CAS or by formulas as follows. First use $[xJ_1(\lambda x)]' = \lambda x J_0(\lambda x)$ from Theorem 1 in Sec. 5.4 and then integration by parts,

$$a_m = \frac{2}{J_1^2(\lambda)} \int_0^1 x(1 - x^2) J_0(\lambda x)\, dx = \frac{2}{J_1^2(\lambda)} \left[\frac{1}{\lambda}(1 - x^2) x J_1(\lambda x) \Big|_0^1 - \frac{1}{\lambda} \int_0^1 x J_1(\lambda x)(-2x)\, dx \right].$$

The integral-free part is zero. The remaining integral can be evaluated by $[x^2 J_2(\lambda x)]' = \lambda x^2 J_1(\lambda x)$ from Theorem 1 in Sec. 5.4. This gives

$$a_m = \frac{4 J_2(\lambda)}{\lambda^2 J_1^2(\lambda)} \qquad (\lambda = \alpha_{0,m}).$$

Numeric values can be obtained from a CAS (or from the table on p. 409 of Ref. [GenRef1] in App. 1, together with the formula $J_2 = 2x^{-1}J_1 - J_0$ in Theorem 1 of Sec. 5.4). This gives the eigenfunction expansion of $1 - x^2$ in terms of Bessel functions J_0, that is,

$$1 - x^2 = 1.1081 J_0(2.405x) - 0.1398 J_0(5.520x) + 0.0455 J_0(8.654x) - 0.0210 J_0(11.792x) + \cdots.$$

A graph would show that the curve of $1 - x^2$ and that of the sum of first three terms practically coincide. ■

Mean Square Convergence. Completeness

Ideas on approximation in the last section generalize from Fourier series to orthogonal series (1) that are made up of an orthonormal set that is "complete," that is, consists of "sufficiently many" functions so that (1) can represent large classes of other functions (definition below).

In this connection, convergence is **convergence in the norm**, also called **mean-square convergence**; that is, a sequence of functions f_k is called **convergent** *with the limit f* if

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \|f_k - f\| = 0; \tag{12*}$$

written out by (5) in Sec. 11.5 (where we can drop the square root, as this does not affect the limit)

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} \int_a^b r(x)[f_k(x) - f(x)]^2\, dx = 0. \tag{12}$$

Accordingly, the series (1) converges and represents f if

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} \int_a^b r(x)[s_k(x) - f(x)]^2\, dx = 0 \tag{13}$$

where s_k is the kth partial sum of (1).

$$s_k(x) = \sum_{m=0}^{k} a_m y_m(x). \tag{14}$$

Note that the integral in (13) generalizes (3) in Sec. 11.4.

We now define completeness. An **orthonormal** set $y_0, y_1, \cdots$ on an interval $a \leqq x \leqq b$ is **complete** *in a set of functions S* defined on $a \leqq x \leqq b$ if we can approximate every f belonging to S arbitrarily closely in the norm by a linear combination $a_0 y_0 + a_1 y_1 + \cdots + a_k y_k$, that is, technically, if for every $\epsilon > 0$ we can find constants $a_0, \cdots, a_k$ (with k large enough) such that

$$\|f - (a_0 y_0 + \cdots + a_k y_k)\| < \epsilon. \tag{15}$$

Ref. [GenRef7] in App. 1 uses the more modern term **total** for *complete*.

We can now extend the ideas in Sec. 11.4 that guided us from (3) in Sec. 11.4 to Bessel's and Parseval's formulas (7) and (8) in that section. Performing the square in (13) and using (14), we first have (analog of (4) in Sec. 11.4)

$$\begin{aligned}\int_a^b r(x)[s_k(x) - f(x)]^2\, dx &= \int_a^b r s_k^2\, dx - 2\int_a^b r f s_k\, dx + \int_a^b r f^2\, dx \\ &= \int_a^b r\left[\sum_{m=0}^{k} a_m y_m\right]^2 dx - 2\sum_{m=0}^{k} a_m \int_a^b r f y_m\, dx + \int_a^b r f^2\, dx.\end{aligned}$$

The first integral on the right equals $\sum a_m^2$ because $\int r y_m y_l\, dx = 0$ for $m \neq l$, and $\int r y_m^2\, dx = 1$. In the second sum on the right, the integral equals a_m, by (2) with $\|y_m\|^2 = 1$. Hence the first term on the right cancels half of the second term, so that the right side reduces to (analog of (6) in Sec. 11.4)

$$-\sum_{m=0}^{k} a_m^2 + \int_a^b r f^2\, dx.$$

This is nonnegative because in the previous formula the integrand on the left is nonnegative (recall that the weight $r(x)$ is positive!) and so is the integral on the left. This proves the important **Bessel's inequality** (analog of (7) in Sec. 11.4)

$$\sum_{m=0}^{k} a_m^2 \leqq \|f\|^2 = \int_a^b r(x) f(x)^2\, dx \qquad (k = 1, 2, \cdots), \tag{16}$$

Here we can let $k \to \infty$, because the left sides form a monotone increasing sequence that is bounded by the right side, so that we have convergence by the familiar Theorem 1 in App. A.3.3 Hence

$$\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m^2 \leqq \|f\|^2. \tag{17}$$

Furthermore, if $y_0, y_1, \cdots$ is complete in a set of functions S, then (13) holds for every f belonging to S. By (13) this implies equality in (16) with $k \to \infty$. Hence in the case of completeness every f in S saisfies the so-called **Parseval equality** (analog of (8) in Sec. 11.4)

$$\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m^2 = \|f\|^2 = \int_a^b r(x) f(x)^2 \, dx. \tag{18}$$

As a consequence of (18) we prove that in the case of *completeness* there is no function orthogonal to *every* function of the orthonormal set, with the trivial exception of a function of zero norm:

THEOREM 2

Completeness

Let $y_0, y_1, \cdots$ be a complete orthonormal set on $a \leqq x \leqq b$ in a set of functions S. Then if a function f belongs to S and is orthogonal to every y_m, it must have norm zero. In particular, if f is continuous, then f must be identically zero.

PROOF Since f is orthogonal to every y_m, the left side of (18) must be zero. If f is continuous, then $\|f\| = 0$ implies $f(x) \equiv 0$, as can be seen directly from (5) in Sec. 11.5 with f instead of y_m because $r(x) > 0$ by assumption. ■

PROBLEM SET 11.6

1–7 FOURIER–LEGENDRE SERIES

Showing the details, develop

1. $63x^5 - 90x^3 + 35x$
2. $(x + 1)^2$
3. $1 - x^4$
4. $1, \quad x, \quad x^2, \quad x^3, \quad x^4$
5. Prove that if $f(x)$ is even (is odd, respectively), its Fourier–Legendre series contains only $P_m(x)$ with even m (only $P_m(x)$ with odd m, respectively). Give examples.
6. What can you say about the coefficients of the Fourier–Legendre series of $f(x)$ if the Maclaurin series of $f(x)$ contains only powers x^{4m} $(m = 0, 1, 2, \cdots)$?
7. What happens to the Fourier–Legendre series of a *polynomial* $f(x)$ if you change a coefficient of $f(x)$? Experiment. Try to prove your answer.

8–13 CAS EXPERIMENT

FOURIER–LEGENDRE SERIES. Find and graph (on common axes) the partial sums up to S_{m_0} whose graph practically coincides with that of $f(x)$ within graphical accuracy. State m_0. On what does the size of m_0 seem to depend?

8. $f(x) = \sin \pi x$
9. $f(x) = \sin 2\pi x$
10. $f(x) = e^{-x^2}$
11. $f(x) = (1 + x^2)^{-1}$
12. $f(x) = J_0(\alpha_{0,1} x)$, $\quad \alpha_{0,1}$ = the first positive zero of $J_0(x)$
13. $f(x) = J_0(\alpha_{0,2} x)$, $\quad \alpha_{0,2}$ = the second positive zero of $J_0(x)$

14. TEAM PROJECT. Orthogonality on the Entire Real Axis. Hermite Polynomials.[8] These orthogonal polynomials are defined by $He_0(1) = 1$ and

$$(19) \qquad He_n(x) = (-1)^n e^{x^2/2} \frac{d^n}{dx^n}(e^{-x^2/2}), \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots.$$

REMARK. As is true for many special functions, the literature contains more than one notation, and one sometimes defines as Hermite polynomials the functions

$$H_0^* = 1, \qquad H_n^*(x) = (-1)^n e^{x^2} \frac{d^n e^{-x^2}}{dx^n}.$$

This differs from our definition, which is preferred in applications.

(a) Small Values of *n*. Show that

$$He_1(x) = x, \qquad He_2(x) = x^2 - 1,$$
$$He_3(x) = x^3 - 3x, \qquad He_4(x) = x^4 - 6x^2 + 3.$$

(b) Generating Function. A generating function of the Hermite polynomials is

$$(20) \qquad e^{tx - t^2/2} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x) t^n$$

because $He_n(x) = n!\, a_n(x)$. Prove this. *Hint*: Use the formula for the coefficients of a Maclaurin series and note that $tx - \frac{1}{2}t^2 = \frac{1}{2}x^2 - \frac{1}{2}(x - t)^2$.

(c) Derivative. Differentiating the generating function with respect to x, show that

$$(21) \qquad He_n'(x) = nHe_{n-1}(x).$$

(d) Orthogonality on the *x*-Axis needs a weight function that goes to zero sufficiently fast as $x \to \pm\infty$, (Why?)

Show that the Hermite polynomials are orthogonal on $-\infty < x < \infty$ with respect to the weight function $r(x) = e^{-x^2/2}$. *Hint*. Use integration by parts and (21).

(e) ODEs. Show that

$$(22) \qquad He_n'(x) = xHe_n(x) - He_{n+1}(x).$$

Using this with $n - 1$ instead of n and (21), show that $y = He_n(x)$ satisfies the ODE

$$(23) \qquad y'' = xy' + ny = 0.$$

Show that $w = e^{-x^2/4}y$ is a solution of **Weber's equation**

$$(24) \quad w'' + (n + \tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{4}x^2)w = 0 \qquad (n = 0, 1, \cdots).$$

15. CAS EXPERIMENT. Fourier–Bessel Series. Use Example 2 and $R = 1$, so that you get the series

$$(25) \qquad f(x) = a_1 J_0(\alpha_{0,1}x) + a_2 J_0(\alpha_{0,2}x) + a_3 J_0(\alpha_{0,3}x) + \cdots$$

With the zeros $\alpha_{0,1}\alpha_{0,2}, \cdots$ from your CAS (see also Table A1 in App. 5).

(a) Graph the terms $J_0(\alpha_{0,1}x), \cdots, J_0(\alpha_{0,10}x)$ for $0 \leqq x \leqq 1$ on common axes.

(b) Write a program for calculating partial sums of (25). Find out for what $f(x)$ your CAS can evaluate the integrals. Take two such $f(x)$ and comment empirically on the speed of convergence by observing the decrease of the coefficients.

(c) Take $f(x) = 1$ in (25) and evaluate the integrals for the coefficients analytically by (21a), Sec. 5.4, with $\nu = 1$. Graph the first few partial sums on common axes.

11.7 Fourier Integral

Fourier series are powerful tools for problems involving functions that are periodic or are of interest on a finite interval only. Sections 11.2 and 11.3 first illustrated this, and various further applications follow in Chap. 12. Since, of course, many problems involve functions that are ***nonperiodic*** *and are of interest on the whole x-axis,* we ask what can be done to extend the method of Fourier series to such functions. This idea will lead to "Fourier integrals."

In Example 1 we start from a special function f_L of period $2L$ and see what happens to its Fourier series if we let $L \to \infty$. Then we do the same for an *arbitrary* function f_L of period $2L$. This will motivate and suggest the main result of this section, which is an integral representation given in Theorem 1 below.

---

[8]CHARLES HERMITE (1822–1901), French mathematician, is known for his work in algebra and number theory. The great HENRI POINCARÉ (1854–1912) was one of his students.

EXAMPLE 1 Rectangular Wave

Consider the periodic rectangular wave $f_L(x)$ of period $2L > 2$ given by

$$f_L(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if} \quad -L < x < -1 \\ 1 & \text{if} \quad -1 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad 1 < x < L. \end{cases}$$

The left part of Fig. 280 shows this function for $2L = 4, 8, 16$ as well as the nonperiodic function $f(x)$, which we obtain from f_L if we let $L \to \infty$,

$$f(x) = \lim_{L\to\infty} f_L(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } -1 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

We now explore what happens to the Fourier coefficients of f_L as L increases. Since f_L is even, $b_n = 0$ for all n. For a_n the Euler formulas (6), Sec. 11.2, give

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{2L}\int_{-1}^{1} dx = \frac{1}{L}, \qquad a_n = \frac{1}{L}\int_{-1}^{1} \cos\frac{n\pi x}{L}\, dx = \frac{2}{L}\int_{0}^{1} \cos\frac{n\pi x}{L}\, dx = \frac{2}{L}\,\frac{\sin(n\pi/L)}{n\pi/L}.$$

This sequence of Fourier coefficients is called the **amplitude spectrum** of f_L because $|a_n|$ is the maximum amplitude of the wave $a_n \cos(n\pi x/L)$. Figure 280 shows this spectrum for the periods $2L = 4, 8, 16$. We see that for increasing L these amplitudes become more and more dense on the positive w_n-axis, where $w_n = n\pi/L$. Indeed, for $2L = 4, 8, 16$ we have 1, 3, 7 amplitudes per "half-wave" of the function $(2 \sin w_n)/(Lw_n)$ (dashed in the figure). Hence for $2L = 2^k$ we have $2^{k-1} - 1$ amplitudes per half-wave, so that these amplitudes will eventually be everywhere dense on the positive w_n-axis (and will decrease to zero).

The outcome of this example gives an intuitive impression of what about to expect if we turn from our special function to an arbitrary one, as we shall do next. ■

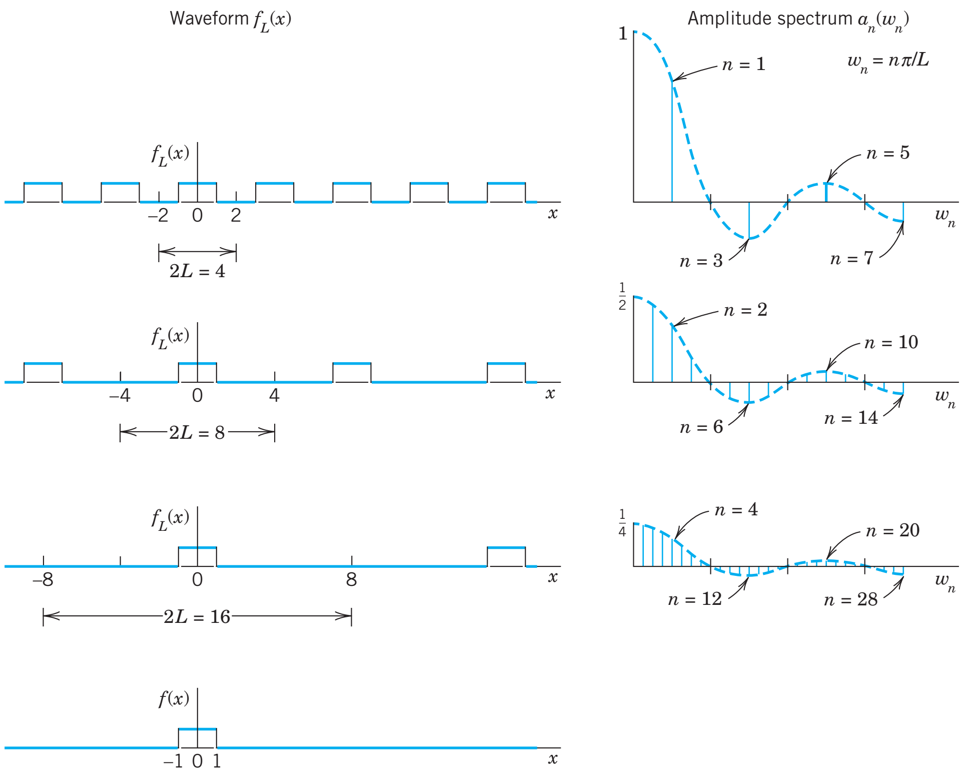


Fig. 280. Waveforms and amplitude spectra in Example 1

From Fourier Series to Fourier Integral

We now consider any periodic function $f_L(x)$ of period $2L$ that can be represented by a Fourier series

$$f_L(x) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos w_n x + b_n \sin w_n x), \qquad w_n = \frac{n\pi}{L}$$

and find out what happens if we let $L \to \infty$. Together with Example 1 the present calculation will suggest that we should expect an integral (instead of a series) involving $\cos wx$ and $\sin wx$ with w no longer restricted to integer multiples $w = w_n = n\pi/L$ of π/L but taking *all* values. We shall also see what form such an integral might have.

If we insert a_n and b_n from the Euler formulas (6), Sec. 11.2, and denote the variable of integration by v, the Fourier series of $f_L(x)$ becomes

$$f_L(x) = \frac{1}{2L}\int_{-L}^{L} f_L(v)\,dv + \frac{1}{L}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left[\cos w_n x \int_{-L}^{L} f_L(v)\cos w_n v\,dv + \sin w_n x \int_{-L}^{L} f_L(v)\sin w_n v\,dv\right].$$

We now set

$$\Delta w = w_{n+1} - w_n = \frac{(n+1)\pi}{L} - \frac{n\pi}{L} = \frac{\pi}{L}.$$

Then $1/L = \Delta w/\pi$, and we may write the Fourier series in the form

$$f_L(x) = \frac{1}{2L}\int_{-L}^{L} f_L(v)\,dv + \frac{1}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left[(\cos w_n x)\,\Delta w \int_{-L}^{L} f_L(v)\cos w_n v\,dv + (\sin w_n x)\Delta w \int_{-L}^{L} f_L(v)\sin w_n v\,dv\right]. \tag{1}$$

This representation is valid for any fixed L, arbitrarily large, but finite.

We now let $L \to \infty$ and assume that the resulting nonperiodic function

$$f(x) = \lim_{L\to\infty} f_L(x)$$

is **absolutely integrable** on the x-axis; that is, the following (finite!) limits exist:

$$\lim_{a\to-\infty}\int_{a}^{0} |f(x)|\,dx + \lim_{b\to\infty}\int_{0}^{b} |f(x)|\,dx \quad \left(\text{written } \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |f(x)|\,dx\right). \tag{2}$$

Then $1/L \to 0$, and the value of the first term on the right side of (1) approaches zero. Also $\Delta w = \pi/L \to 0$ and it seems ***plausible*** that the infinite series in (1) becomes an integral from 0 to ∞, which represents $f(x)$, namely,

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^\infty \left[\cos wx \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v)\cos wv\, dv + \sin wx \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v)\sin wv\, dv\right] dw. \tag{3}$$

If we introduce the notations

$$A(w) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v)\cos wv\, dv, \qquad B(w) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v)\sin wv\, dv \tag{4}$$

we can write this in the form

$$f(x) = \int_0^\infty [A(w)\cos wx + B(w)\sin wx]\, dw. \tag{5}$$

This is called a representation of $f(x)$ by a **Fourier integral**.

It is clear that our naive approach merely ***suggests*** the representation (5), but by no means establishes it; in fact, the limit of the series in (1) as Δw approaches zero is not the definition of the integral (3). Sufficient conditions for the validity of (5) are as follows.

THEOREM 1

Fourier Integral

If $f(x)$ is piecewise continuous (see Sec. 6.1) *in every finite interval and has a right-hand derivative and a left-hand derivative at every point* (see Sec 11.1) *and if the integral* (2) *exists, then $f(x)$ can be represented by a Fourier integral* (5) *with A and B given by* (4). *At a point where $f(x)$ is discontinuous the value of the Fourier integral equals the average of the left- and right-hand limits of $f(x)$ at that point* (see Sec. 11.1). (Proof in Ref. [C12]; see App. 1.)

Applications of Fourier Integrals

The main application of Fourier integrals is in solving ODEs and PDEs, as we shall see for PDEs in Sec. 12.6. However, we can also use Fourier integrals in integration and in discussing functions defined by integrals, as the next example.

EXAMPLE 2 **Single Pulse, Sine Integral. Dirichlet's Discontinuous Factor. Gibbs Phenomenon**

Find the Fourier integral representation of the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if} \quad |x| < 1 \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad |x| > 1 \end{cases} \qquad \text{(Fig. 281)}$$

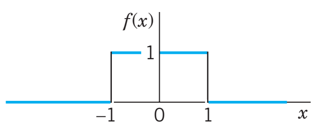


Fig. 281. Example 2

Solution. From (4) we obtain

$$A(w) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \cos wv \, dv = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-1}^{1} \cos wv \, dv = \frac{\sin wv}{\pi w} \bigg|_{-1}^{1} = \frac{2 \sin w}{\pi w}$$

$$B(w) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-1}^{1} \sin wv \, dv = 0$$

and (5) gives the *answer*

$$f(x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{\cos wx \sin w}{w} \, dw. \tag{6}$$

The average of the left- and right-hand limits of $f(x)$ at $x = 1$ is equal to $(1 + 0)/2$, that is, $\frac{1}{2}$.
Furthermore, from (6) and Theorem 1 we obtain (multiply by $\pi/2$)

$$\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{\cos wx \sin w}{w} \, dw = \begin{cases} \pi/2 & \text{if} \quad 0 \leqq x < 1, \\ \pi/4 & \text{if} \quad x = 1, \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > 1. \end{cases} \tag{7}$$

We mention that this integral is called **Dirichlet's discontinous factor**. (For P. L. Dirichlet see Sec. 10.8.)
The case $x = 0$ is of particular interest. If $x = 0$, then (7) gives

$$\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{\sin w}{w} \, dw = \frac{\pi}{2}. \tag{8*}$$

We see that this integral is the limit of the so-called **sine integral**

$$\mathrm{Si}(u) = \int_{0}^{u} \frac{\sin w}{w} \, dw \tag{8}$$

as $u \to \infty$. The graphs of $\mathrm{Si}(u)$ and of the integrand are shown in Fig. 282.

In the case of a Fourier series the graphs of the partial sums are approximation curves of the curve of the periodic function represented by the series. Similarly, in the case of the Fourier integral (5), approximations are obtained by replacing ∞ by numbers a. Hence the integral

$$\frac{2}{\pi} \int_{0}^{a} \frac{\cos wx \sin w}{w} \, dw \tag{9}$$

approximates the right side in (6) and therefore $f(x)$.

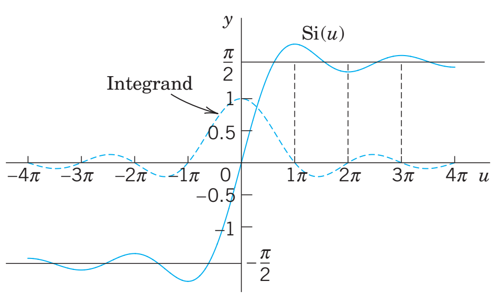


Fig. 282. Sine integral Si(u) and integrand

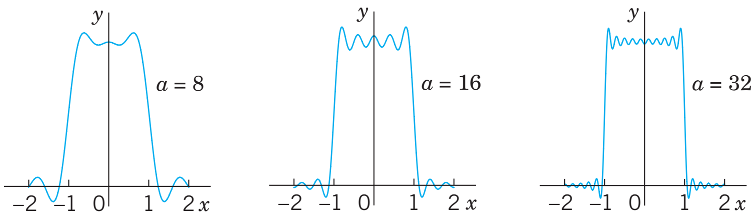


Fig. 283. The integral (9) for $a = 8, 16$, and 32, illustrating the development of the Gibbs phenomenon

Figure 283 shows oscillations near the points of discontinuity of $f(x)$. We might expect that these oscillations disappear as a approaches infinity. But this is not true; with increasing a, they are shifted closer to the points $x = \pm 1$. This unexpected behavior, which also occurs in connection with Fourier series (see Sec. 11.2), is known as the **Gibbs phenomenon**. We can explain it by representing (9) in terms of sine integrals as follows. Using (11) in App. A3.1, we have

$$\frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^a \frac{\cos wx \sin w}{w}\, dw = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^a \frac{\sin (w + wx)}{w}\, dw + \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^a \frac{\sin (w - wx)}{w}\, dw.$$

In the first integral on the right we set $w + wx = t$. Then $dw/w = dt/t$, and $0 \leqq w \leqq a$ corresponds to $0 \leqq t \leqq (x + 1)a$. In the last integral we set $w - wx = -t$. Then $dw/w = dt/t$, and $0 \leqq w \leqq a$ corresponds to $0 \leqq t \leqq (x - 1)a$. Since $\sin(-t) = -\sin t$, we thus obtain

$$\frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^a \frac{\cos wx \sin w}{w}\, dw = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{(x+1)a} \frac{\sin t}{t}\, dt - \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{(x-1)a} \frac{\sin t}{t}\, dt.$$

From this and (8) we see that our integral (9) equals

$$\frac{1}{\pi}\,\mathrm{Si}(a[x + 1]) - \frac{1}{\pi}\,\mathrm{Si}(a[x - 1])$$

and the oscillations in Fig. 283 result from those in Fig. 282. The increase of a amounts to a transformation of the scale on the axis and causes the shift of the oscillations (the waves) toward the points of discontinuity -1 and 1. ■

Fourier Cosine Integral and Fourier Sine Integral

Just as Fourier *series* simplify if a function is even or odd (see Sec. 11.2), so do Fourier *integrals*, and you can save work. Indeed, if f has a Fourier integral representation and is *even*, then $B(w) = 0$ in (4). This holds because the integrand of $B(w)$ is odd. Then (5) reduces to a **Fourier cosine integral**

$$\textbf{(10)}\qquad f(x) = \int_0^\infty A(w) \cos wx\, dw \qquad \text{where} \qquad A(w) = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^\infty f(v) \cos wv\, dv.$$

Note the change in $A(w)$: for even f the integrand is even, hence the integral from $-\infty$ to ∞ equals twice the integral from 0 to ∞, just as in (7a) of Sec. 11.2.

Similarly, if f has a Fourier integral representation and is *odd*, then $A(w) = 0$ in (4). This is true because the integrand of $A(w)$ is odd. Then (5) becomes a **Fourier sine integral**

$$\textbf{(11)}\qquad f(x) = \int_0^\infty B(w) \sin wx\, dw \qquad \text{where} \qquad B(w) = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^\infty f(v) \sin wv\, dv.$$

Note the change of $B(w)$ to an integral from 0 to ∞ because $B(w)$ is even (odd times odd is even).

Earlier in this section we pointed out that the main application of the Fourier integral representation is in differential equations. However, these representations also help in evaluating integrals, as the following example shows for integrals from 0 to ∞.

EXAMPLE 3 Laplace Integrals

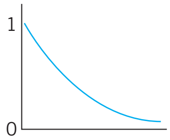


Fig. 284. $f(x)$ in Example 3

We shall derive the Fourier cosine and Fourier sine integrals of $f(x) = e^{-kx}$, where $x > 0$ and $k > 0$ (Fig. 284). The result will be used to evaluate the so-called Laplace integrals.

Solution. **(a)** From (10) we have $A(w) = \dfrac{2}{\pi}\displaystyle\int_0^\infty e^{-kv}\cos wv\, dv$. Now, by integration by parts,

$$\int e^{-kv}\cos wv\, dv = -\frac{k}{k^2 + w^2}e^{-kv}\left(-\frac{w}{k}\sin wv + \cos wv\right).$$

If $v = 0$, the expression on the right equals $-k/(k^2 + w^2)$. If v approaches infinity, that expression approaches zero because of the exponential factor. Thus $2/\pi$ times the integral from 0 to ∞ gives

$$A(w) = \frac{2k/\pi}{k^2 + w^2}. \tag{12}$$

By substituting this into the first integral in (10) we thus obtain the Fourier cosine integral representation

$$f(x) = e^{-kx} = \frac{2k}{\pi}\int_0^\infty \frac{\cos wx}{k^2 + w^2}\, dw \qquad (x > 0, \quad k > 0).$$

From this representation we see that

$$\boxed{\int_0^\infty \frac{\cos wx}{k^2 + w^2}\, dw = \frac{\pi}{2k}e^{-kx}} \qquad (x > 0, \quad k > 0). \tag{13}$$

(b) Similarly, from (11) we have $B(w) = \dfrac{2}{\pi}\displaystyle\int_0^\infty e^{-kv}\sin wv\, dv$. By integration by parts,

$$\int e^{-kv}\sin wv\, dv = -\frac{w}{k^2 + w^2}e^{-kv}\left(\frac{k}{w}\sin wv + \cos wv\right).$$

This equals $-w/(k^2 + w^2)$ if $v = 0$, and approaches 0 as $v \to \infty$. Thus

$$B(w) = \frac{2w/\pi}{k^2 + w^2}. \tag{14}$$

From (14) we thus obtain the Fourier sine integral representation

$$f(x) = e^{-kx} = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^\infty \frac{w \sin wx}{k^2 + w^2}\, dw.$$

From this we see that

$$\boxed{\int_0^\infty \frac{w\sin wx}{k^2 + w^2}\, dw = \frac{\pi}{2}e^{-kx}} \qquad (x > 0, \quad k > 0). \tag{15}$$

The integrals (13) and (15) are called the **Laplace integrals**. ■

PROBLEM SET 11.7

1–6 EVALUATION OF INTEGRALS

Show that the integral represents the indicated function. *Hint*. Use (5), (10), or (11); the integral tells you which one, and its value tells you what function to consider. Show your work in detail.

1. $$\int_0^\infty \frac{\cos xw + w \sin xw}{1 + w^2}\, dx = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if} \quad x < 0 \\ \pi/2 & \text{if} \quad x = 0 \\ \pi e^{-x} & \text{if} \quad x > 0 \end{cases}$$

2. $$\int_0^\infty \frac{\sin \pi w \sin xw}{1 - w^2}\, dw = \begin{cases} \frac{\pi}{2} \sin x & \text{if} \quad 0 \leqq x \leqq \pi \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > \pi \end{cases}$$

3. $$\int_0^\infty \frac{1 - \cos \pi w}{w} \sin xw\, dw = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}\pi & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < \pi \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > \pi \end{cases}$$

4. $$\int_0^\infty \frac{\cos \frac{1}{2}\pi w}{1 - w^2} \cos xw\, dw = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}\pi \cos x & \text{if} \quad 0 < |x| < \frac{1}{2}\pi \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad |x| \geqq \frac{1}{2}\pi \end{cases}$$

5. $$\int_0^\infty \frac{\sin w - w \cos w}{w^2} \sin xw\, dw = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}\pi x & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < 1 \\ \frac{1}{4}\pi & \text{if} \quad x = 1 \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > 1 \end{cases}$$

6. $$\int_0^\infty \frac{w^3 \sin xw}{w^4 + 4}\, dw = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi e^{-x} \cos x \quad \text{if} \quad x > 0$$

7–12 FOURIER COSINE INTEGRAL REPRESENTATIONS

Represent $f(x)$ as an integral (10).

7. $$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > 1 \end{cases}$$

8. $$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > 1 \end{cases}$$

9. $f(x) = 1/(1 + x^2)$ $[x > 0.$ *Hint.* See (13).]

10. $$f(x) = \begin{cases} a^2 - x^2 & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < a \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > a \end{cases}$$

11. $$f(x) = \begin{cases} \sin x & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < \pi \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > \pi \end{cases}$$

12. $$f(x) = \begin{cases} e^{-x} & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < a \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > a \end{cases}$$

13. CAS EXPERIMENT. Approximate Fourier Cosine Integrals. Graph the integrals in Prob. 7, 9, and 11 as functions of x. Graph approximations obtained by replacing ∞ with finite upper limits of your choice. Compare the quality of the approximations. Write a short report on your empirical results and observations.

14. PROJECT. Properties of Fourier Integrals

(a) Fourier cosine integral. Show that (10) implies

(a1) $$f(ax) = \frac{1}{a} \int_0^\infty A\left(\frac{w}{a}\right) \cos xw\, dw$$

$(a > 0)$ (*Scale change*)

(a2) $$xf(x) = \int_0^\infty B^*(w) \sin xw\, dw,$$

$$B^* = -\frac{dA}{dw}, \qquad A \text{ as in (10)}$$

(a3) $$x^2 f(x) = \int_0^\infty A^*(w) \cos xw\, dw,$$

$$A^* = -\frac{d^2 A}{dw^2}.$$

(b) Solve Prob. 8 by applying (a3) to the result of Prob. 7.

(c) Verify (a2) for $f(x) = 1$ if $0 < x < a$ and $f(x) = 0$ if $x > a$.

(d) Fourier sine integral. Find formulas for the Fourier sine integral similar to those in (a).

15. CAS EXPERIMENT. Sine Integral. Plot $\text{Si}(u)$ for positive u. Does the sequence of the maximum and minimum values give the impression that it converges and has the limit $\pi/2$? Investigate the Gibbs phenomenon graphically.

16–20 FOURIER SINE INTEGRAL REPRESENTATIONS

Represent $f(x)$ as an integral (11).

16. $$f(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < a \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > a \end{cases}$$

17. $$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > 1 \end{cases}$$

18. $$f(x) = \begin{cases} \cos x & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < \pi \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > \pi \end{cases}$$

19. $$f(x) = \begin{cases} e^{x} & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > 1 \end{cases}$$

20. $$f(x) = \begin{cases} e^{-x} & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > 1 \end{cases}$$

11.8 Fourier Cosine and Sine Transforms

An **integral transform** is a transformation in the form of an integral that produces from given functions new functions depending on a different variable. One is mainly interested in these transforms because they can be used as tools in solving ODEs, PDEs, and integral equations and can often be of help in handling and applying special functions. The Laplace transform of Chap. 6 serves as an example and is by far the most important integral transform in engineering.

Next in order of importance are Fourier transforms. They can be obtained from the Fourier integral in Sec. 11.7 in a straightforward way. In this section we derive two such transforms that are real, and in Sec. 11.9 a complex one.

Fourier Cosine Transform

The Fourier cosine transform concerns ***even functions*** $f(x)$. We obtain it from the Fourier cosine integral [(10) in Sec. 10.7]

$$f(x) = \int_0^\infty A(w) \cos wx \, dw, \qquad \text{where} \qquad A(w) = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^\infty f(v) \cos wv \, dv.$$

Namely, we set $A(w) = \sqrt{2/\pi}\, \hat{f}_c(w)$, where c suggests "cosine." Then, writing $v = x$ in the formula for $A(w)$, we have

$$\hat{f}_c(w) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\int_0^\infty f(x) \cos wx \, dx \tag{1a}$$

and

$$f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\int_0^\infty \hat{f}_c(w) \cos wx \, dw. \tag{1b}$$

Formula (1a) gives from $f(x)$ a new function $\hat{f}_c(w)$, called the **Fourier cosine transform** of $f(x)$. Formula (1b) gives us back $f(x)$ from $\hat{f}_c(w)$, and we therefore call $f(x)$ the **inverse Fourier cosine transform** of $\hat{f}_c(w)$.

The process of obtaining the transform $\hat{f}_c$ from a given f is also called the **Fourier cosine transform** or the *Fourier cosine transform method.*

Fourier Sine Transform

Similarly, in (11), Sec. 11.7, we set $B(w) = \sqrt{2/\pi}\, \hat{f}_s(w)$, where s suggests "sine." Then, writing $v = x$, we have from (11), Sec. 11.7, the **Fourier sine transform**, of $f(x)$ given by

$$\hat{f}_s(w) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\int_0^\infty f(x) \sin wx \, dx, \tag{2a}$$

and the **inverse Fourier sine transform** of $\hat{f}_s(w)$, given by

(2b) $$f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty \hat{f}_s(w) \sin wx \, dw.$$

The process of obtaining $f_s(w)$ from $f(x)$ is also called the **Fourier sine transform** or the *Fourier sine transform method.*

Other notations are

$$\mathcal{F}_c(f) = \hat{f}_c, \qquad \mathcal{F}_s(f) = \hat{f}_s$$

and $\mathcal{F}_c^{-1}$ and $\mathcal{F}_s^{-1}$ for the inverses of $\mathcal{F}_c$ and $\mathcal{F}_s$, respectively.

EXAMPLE 1 Fourier Cosine and Fourier Sine Transforms

Find the Fourier cosine and Fourier sine transforms of the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} k & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < a \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x > a \end{cases} \qquad \text{(Fig. 285).}$$

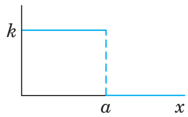


Fig. 285. $f(x)$ in Example 1

Solution. From the definitions (1a) and (2a) we obtain by integration

$$\hat{f}_c(w) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\, k \int_0^a \cos wx \, dx = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\, k \left(\frac{\sin aw}{w}\right)$$

$$\hat{f}_s(w) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\, k \int_0^a \sin wx \, dx = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\, k \left(\frac{1 - \cos aw}{w}\right).$$

This agrees with formulas 1 in the first two tables in Sec. 11.10 (where $k = 1$).

Note that for $f(x) = k = \text{const}$ $(0 < x < \infty)$, these transforms do not exist. (Why?) ■

EXAMPLE 2 Fourier Cosine Transform of the Exponential Function

Find $\mathcal{F}_c(e^{-x})$.

Solution. By integration by parts and recursion,

$$\mathcal{F}_c(e^{-x}) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty e^{-x} \cos wx \, dx = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{e^{-x}}{1 + w^2} (-\cos wx + w \sin wx) \Big|_0^\infty = \frac{\sqrt{2/\pi}}{1 + w^2}.$$

This agrees with formula 3 in Table I, Sec. 11.10, with $a = 1$. See also the next example. ■

What did we do to introduce the two integral transforms under consideration? Actually not much: We changed the notations A and B to get a "symmetric" distribution of the constant $2/\pi$ in the original formulas (1) and (2). This redistribution is a standard convenience, but it is not essential. One could do without it.

What have we gained? We show next that these transforms have operational properties that permit them to convert differentiations into algebraic operations (just as the Laplace transform does). This is the key to their application in solving differential equations.

Linearity, Transforms of Derivatives

If $f(x)$ is absolutely integrable (see Sec. 11.7) on the positive x-axis and piecewise continuous (see Sec. 6.1) on every finite interval, then the Fourier cosine and sine transforms of f exist.

Furthermore, if f and g have Fourier cosine and sine transforms, so does $af + bg$ for any constants a and b, and by (1a)

$$\begin{aligned}\mathscr{F}_c(af + bg) &= \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\int_0^\infty [af(x) + bg(x)] \cos wx \, dx \\ &= a\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\int_0^\infty f(x) \cos wx \, dx + b\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\int_0^\infty g(x) \cos wx \, dx.\end{aligned}$$

The right side is $a\mathscr{F}_c(f) + b\mathscr{F}_c(g)$. Similarly for $\mathscr{F}_s$, by (2). This shows that the Fourier cosine and sine transforms are **linear operations**,

$$\text{(3)} \qquad \begin{aligned}&\text{(a)} \quad \mathscr{F}_c(af + bg) = a\mathscr{F}_c(f) + b\mathscr{F}_c(g), \\ &\text{(b)} \quad \mathscr{F}_s(af + bg) = a\mathscr{F}_s(f) + b\mathscr{F}_s(g).\end{aligned}$$

THEOREM 1

Cosine and Sine Transforms of Derivatives

Let $f(x)$ be continuous and absolutely integrable on the x-axis, let $f'(x)$ be piecewise continuous on every finite interval, and let $f(x) \to 0$ as $x \to \infty$. Then

$$\textbf{(4)} \qquad \begin{aligned}&\textbf{(a)} \quad \mathscr{F}_c\{f'(x)\} = w\mathscr{F}_s\{f(x)\} - \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}f(0), \\ &\textbf{(b)} \quad \mathscr{F}_s\{f'(x)\} = -w\mathscr{F}_c\{f(x)\}.\end{aligned}$$

PROOF This follows from the definitions and by using integration by parts, namely,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathscr{F}_c\{f'(x)\} &= \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\int_0^\infty f'(x) \cos wx \, dx \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\left[f(x) \cos wx \Big|_0^\infty + w\int_0^\infty f(x) \sin wx \, dx\right] \\ &= -\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}f(0) + w\mathscr{F}_s\{f(x)\};\end{aligned}$$

and similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathscr{F}_s\{f'(x)\} &= \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\int_0^\infty f'(x) \sin wx \, dx \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\left[f(x) \sin wx \Big|_0^\infty - w\int_0^\infty f(x) \cos wx \, dx\right] \\ &= 0 - w\mathscr{F}_c\{f(x)\}.\end{aligned}$$

■

Formula (4a) with f' instead of f gives (when f', f'' satisfy the respective assumptions for f, f' in Theorem 1)

$$\mathcal{F}_c\{f''(x)\} = w\mathcal{F}_s\{f'(x)\} - \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\, f'(0);$$

hence by (4b)

(5a) $$\boxed{\mathcal{F}_c\{f''(x)\} = -w^2\mathcal{F}_c\{f(x)\} - \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\, f'(0).}$$

Similarly,

(5b) $$\boxed{\mathcal{F}_s\{f''(x)\} = -w^2\mathcal{F}_s\{f(x)\} + \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\, wf(0).}$$

A basic application of (5) to PDEs will be given in Sec. 12.7. For the time being we show how (5) can be used for deriving transforms.

EXAMPLE 3 **An Application of the Operational Formula (5)**

Find the Fourier cosine transform $\mathcal{F}_c(e^{-ax})$ of $f(x) = e^{-ax}$, where $a > 0$.

Solution. By differentiation, $(e^{-ax})'' = a^2e^{-ax}$; thus

$$a^2f(x) = f''(x).$$

From this, (5a), and the linearity (3a),

$$\begin{aligned} a^2\mathcal{F}_c(f) &= \mathcal{F}_c(f'') \\ &= -w^2\mathcal{F}_c(f) - \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\, f'(0) \\ &= -w^2\mathcal{F}_c(f) + a\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$(a^2 + w^2)\mathcal{F}_c(f) = a\sqrt{2/\pi}.$$

The *answer* is (see Table I, Sec. 11.10)

$$\mathcal{F}_c(e^{-ax}) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\left(\frac{a}{a^2 + w^2}\right) \qquad (a > 0).$$ ■

Tables of Fourier cosine and sine transforms are included in Sec. 11.10.

PROBLEM SET 11.8

1–8 FOURIER COSINE TRANSFORM

1. Find the cosine transform $\hat{f}_c(w)$ of $f(x) = 1$ if $0 < x < 1$, $f(x) = -1$ if $1 < x < 2$, $f(x) = 0$ if $x > 2$.
2. Find f in Prob. 1 from the answer $\hat{f}_c$.
3. Find $\hat{f}_c(w)$ for $f(x) = x$ if $0 < x < 2$, $f(x) = 0$ if $x > 2$.
4. Derive formula 3 in Table I of Sec. 11.10 by integration.
5. Find $\hat{f}_c(w)$ for $f(x) = x^2$ if $0 < x < 1$, $f(x) = 0$ if $x > 1$.
6. **Continuity assumptions.** Find $\hat{g}_c(w)$ for $g(x) = 2$ if $0 < x < 1$, $g(x) = 0$ if $x > 1$. Try to obtain from it $\hat{f}_c(w)$ for $f(x)$ in Prob. 5 by using (5a).
7. **Existence?** Does the Fourier cosine transform of $x^{-1} \sin x$ $(0 < x < \infty)$ exist? Of $x^{-1} \cos x$? Give reasons.
8. **Existence?** Does the Fourier cosine transform of $f(x) = k = \text{const}$ $(0 < x < \infty)$ exist? The Fourier sine transform?

9–15 FOURIER SINE TRANSFORM

9. Find $\mathcal{F}_s(e^{-ax})$, $a > 0$, by integration.
10. Obtain the answer to Prob. 9 from (5b).
11. Find $f_s(w)$ for $f(x) = x^2$ if $0 < x < 1$, $f(x) = 0$ if $x > 1$.
12. Find $\mathcal{F}_s(xe^{-x^2/2})$ from (4b) and a suitable formula in Table I of Sec. 11.10.
13. Find $\mathcal{F}_s(e^{-x})$ from (4a) and formula 3 of Table I in Sec. 11.10.
14. **Gamma function.** Using formulas 2 and 4 in Table II of Sec. 11.10, prove $\Gamma(\frac{1}{2}) = \sqrt{\pi}$ [(30) in App. A3.1], a value needed for Bessel functions and other applications.
15. **WRITING PROJECT. Finding Fourier Cosine and Sine Transforms.** Write a short report on ways of obtaining these transforms, with illustrations by examples of your own.

11.9 Fourier Transform. Discrete and Fast Fourier Transforms

In Sec. 11.8 we derived two real transforms. Now we want to derive a complex transform that is called the **Fourier transform**. It will be obtained from the complex Fourier integral, which will be discussed next.

Complex Form of the Fourier Integral

The (real) Fourier integral is [see (4), (5), Sec. 11.7]

$$f(x) = \int_0^\infty [A(w) \cos wx + B(w) \sin wx]\, dw$$

where

$$A(w) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \cos wv\, dv, \qquad B(w) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \sin wv\, dv.$$

Substituting A and B into the integral for f, we have

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\infty \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v)[\cos wv \cos wx + \sin wv \sin wx]\, dv\, dw.$$

By the addition formula for the cosine [(6) in App. A3.1] the expression in the brackets $[\cdots]$ equals $\cos(wv - wx)$ or, since the cosine is even, $\cos(wx - wv)$. We thus obtain

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^\infty \left[\int_{-\infty}^\infty f(v)\cos(wx - wv)dv\right]dw. \tag{1*}$$

The integral in brackets is an *even* function of w, call it $F(w)$, because $\cos(wx - wv)$ is an even function of w, the function f does not depend on w, and we integrate with respect to v (not w). Hence the integral of $F(w)$ from $w = 0$ to ∞ is $\frac{1}{2}$ times the integral of $F(w)$ from $-\infty$ to ∞. Thus (note the change of the integration limit!)

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^\infty \left[\int_{-\infty}^\infty f(v)\cos(wx - wv)\,dv\right]dw. \tag{1}$$

We claim that the integral of the form (1) with sin instead of cos is zero:

$$\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^\infty \left[\int_{-\infty}^\infty f(v)\sin(wx - wv)\,dv\right]dw = 0. \tag{2}$$

This is true since $\sin(wx - wv)$ is an odd function of w, which makes the integral in brackets an odd function of w, call it $G(w)$. Hence the integral of $G(w)$ from $-\infty$ to ∞ is zero, as claimed.

We now take the integrand of (1) plus $i\,(=\sqrt{-1})$ times the integrand of (2) and use the **Euler formula** [(11) in Sec. 2.2]

$$e^{ix} = \cos x + i\sin x. \tag{3}$$

Taking $wx - wv$ instead of x in (3) and multiplying by $f(v)$ gives

$$f(v)\cos(wx - wv) + if(v)\sin(wx - wv) = f(v)e^{i(wx-wv)}.$$

Hence the result of adding (1) plus i times (2), called the **complex Fourier integral**, is

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^\infty \int_{-\infty}^\infty f(v)e^{iw(x-v)}\,dv\,dw \qquad (i = \sqrt{-1}). \tag{4}$$

To obtain the desired Fourier transform will take only a very short step from here.

Fourier Transform and Its Inverse

Writing the exponential function in (4) as a product of exponential functions, we have

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-\infty}^\infty \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-\infty}^\infty f(v)e^{-iwv}\,dv\right]e^{iwx}\,dw. \tag{5}$$

The expression in brackets is a function of w, is denoted by $\hat{f}(w)$, and is called the **Fourier transform** of f; writing $v = x$, we have

$$\hat{f}(w) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-\infty}^\infty f(x)e^{-iwx}\,dx. \tag{6}$$

With this, (5) becomes

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{f}(w) e^{iwx}\, dw \tag{7}$$

and is called the **inverse Fourier transform** of $\hat{f}(w)$.

Another notation for the Fourier transform is

$$\hat{f} = \mathscr{F}(f),$$

so that

$$f = \mathscr{F}^{-1}(\hat{f}).$$

The process of obtaining the Fourier transform $\mathscr{F}(f) = \hat{f}$ from a given f is also called the **Fourier transform** or the *Fourier transform method*.

Using concepts defined in Secs. 6.1 and 11.7 we now state (without proof) conditions that are sufficient for the existence of the Fourier transform.

THEOREM 1

Existence of the Fourier Transform

If $f(x)$ is absolutely integrable on the x-axis and piecewise continuous on every finite interval, then the Fourier transform $\hat{f}(w)$ of $f(x)$ given by (6) *exists.*

EXAMPLE 1 **Fourier Transform**

Find the Fourier transform of $f(x) = 1$ if $|x| < 1$ and $f(x) = 0$ otherwise.

Solution. Using (6) and integrating, we obtain

$$\hat{f}(w) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-1}^{1} e^{-iwx}\, dx = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \cdot \frac{e^{-iwx}}{-iw}\Big|_{-1}^{1} = \frac{1}{-iw\sqrt{2\pi}}(e^{-iw} - e^{iw}).$$

As in (3) we have $e^{iw} = \cos w + i \sin w$, $e^{-iw} = \cos w - i \sin w$, and by subtraction

$$e^{iw} - e^{-iw} = 2i \sin w.$$

Substituting this in the previous formula on the right, we see that i drops out and we obtain the answer

$$\hat{f}(w) = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sin w}{w}.$$

EXAMPLE 2 **Fourier Transform**

Find the Fourier transform $\mathscr{F}(e^{-ax})$ of $f(x) = e^{-ax}$ if $x > 0$ and $f(x) = 0$ if $x < 0$; here $a > 0$.

Solution. From the definition (6) we obtain by integration

$$\mathscr{F}(e^{-ax}) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-ax} e^{-iwx}\, dx$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{e^{-(a+iw)x}}{-(a + iw)}\Big|_{x=0}^{\infty} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}(a + iw)}.$$

This proves formula 5 of Table III in Sec. 11.10.

Physical Interpretation: Spectrum

The nature of the representation (7) of $f(x)$ becomes clear if we think of it as a superposition of sinusoidal oscillations of all possible frequencies, called a **spectral representation**. This name is suggested by optics, where light is such a superposition of colors (frequencies). In (7), the "**spectral density**" $\hat{f}(w)$ measures the intensity of $f(x)$ in the frequency interval between w and $w + \Delta w$ (Δw small, fixed). We claim that, in connection with vibrations, the integral

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\hat{f}(w)|^2 \, dw$$

can be interpreted as the **total energy** of the physical system. Hence an integral of $|\hat{f}(w)|^2$ from a to b gives the contribution of the frequencies w between a and b to the total energy.

To make this plausible, we begin with a mechanical system giving a single frequency, namely, the harmonic oscillator (mass on a spring, Sec. 2.4)

$$my'' + ky = 0.$$

Here we denote time t by x. Multiplication by y' gives $my'y'' + ky'y = 0$. By integration,

$$\tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}ky^2 = E_0 = \text{const}$$

where $v = y'$ is the velocity. The first term is the kinetic energy, the second the potential energy, and E_0 the total energy of the system. Now a general solution is (use (3) in Sec. 11.4 with $t = x$)

$$y = a_1 \cos w_0 x + b_1 \sin w_0 x = c_1 e^{iw_0 x} + c_{-1} e^{-iw_0 x}, \qquad w_0^2 = k/m$$

where $c_1 = (a_1 - ib_1)/2$, $c_{-1} = \bar{c}_1 = (a_1 + ib_1)/2$. We write simply $A = c_1 e^{iw_0 x}$, $B = c_{-1} e^{-iw_0 x}$. Then $y = A + B$. By differentiation, $v = y' = A' + B' = iw_0(A - B)$. Substitution of v and y on the left side of the equation for E_0 gives

$$E_0 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}ky^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}m(iw_0)^2(A - B)^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}k(A + B)^2.$$

Here $w_0^2 = k/m$, as just stated; hence $mw_0^2 = k$. Also $i^2 = -1$, so that

$$E_0 = \tfrac{1}{2}k[-(A - B)^2 + (A + B)^2] = 2kAB = 2kc_1 e^{iw_0 x} c_{-1} e^{-iw_0 x} = 2kc_1 c_{-1} = 2k|c_1|^2.$$

Hence *the energy is proportional to the square of the amplitude* $|c_1|$.

As the next step, if a more complicated system leads to a periodic solution $y = f(x)$ that can be represented by a Fourier series, then instead of the single energy term $|c_1|^2$ we get a series of squares $|c_n|^2$ of Fourier coefficients c_n given by (6), Sec. 11.4. In this case we have a "**discrete spectrum**" (or "**point spectrum**") consisting of countably many isolated frequencies (infinitely many, in general), the corresponding $|c_n|^2$ being the contributions to the total energy.

Finally, a system whose solution can be represented by an integral (7) leads to the above integral for the energy, as is plausible from the cases just discussed.

Linearity. Fourier Transform of Derivatives

New transforms can be obtained from given ones by using

THEOREM 2

Linearity of the Fourier Transform

The Fourier transform is a ***linear operation****; that is, for any functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ whose Fourier transforms exist and any constants a and b, the Fourier transform of $af + bg$ exists, and*

$$\mathscr{F}(af + bg) = a\mathscr{F}(f) + b\mathscr{F}(g). \tag{8}$$

PROOF This is true because integration is a linear operation, so that (6) gives

$$\begin{aligned}\mathscr{F}\{af(x) + bg(x)\} &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}[af(x) + bg(x)]\,e^{-iwx}\,dx\\ &= a\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{-iwx}\,dx + b\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x)e^{-iwx}\,dx\\ &= a\mathscr{F}\{f(x)\} + b\mathscr{F}\{g(x)\}.\end{aligned}$$

In applying the Fourier transform to differential equations, the key property is that differentiation of functions corresponds to multiplication of transforms by iw:

THEOREM 3

Fourier Transform of the Derivative of $f(x)$

Let $f(x)$ be continuous on the x-axis and $f(x) \to 0$ as $|x| \to \infty$. Furthermore, let $f'(x)$ be absolutely integrable on the x-axis. Then

$$\mathscr{F}\{f'(x)\} = iw\mathscr{F}\{f(x)\}. \tag{9}$$

PROOF From the definition of the Fourier transform we have

$$\mathscr{F}\{f'(x)\} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f'(x)e^{-iwx}\,dx.$$

Integrating by parts, we obtain

$$\mathscr{F}\{f'(x)\} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[f(x)e^{-iwx}\Big|_{-\infty}^{\infty} - (-iw)\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{-iwx}\,dx\right].$$

Since $f(x) \to 0$ as $|x| \to \infty$, the desired result follows, namely,

$$\mathscr{F}\{f'(x)\} = 0 + iw\mathscr{F}\{f(x)\}.$$

Two successive applications of (9) give

$$\mathcal{F}(f'') = iw\mathcal{F}(f') = (iw)^2\mathcal{F}(f).$$

Since $(iw)^2 = -w^2$, we have for the transform of the second derivative of f

$$\mathcal{F}\{f''(x)\} = -w^2\mathcal{F}\{f(x)\}. \tag{10}$$

Similarly for higher derivatives.

An application of (10) to differential equations will be given in Sec. 12.6. For the time being we show how (9) can be used to derive transforms.

EXAMPLE 3 **Application of the Operational Formula (9)**

Find the Fourier transform of xe^{-x^2} from Table III, Sec 11.10.

Solution. We use (9). By formula 9 in Table III

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{F}(xe^{-x^2}) &= \mathcal{F}\{-\tfrac{1}{2}(e^{-x^2})'\}\\ &= -\tfrac{1}{2}\mathcal{F}\{(e^{-x^2})'\}\\ &= -\tfrac{1}{2}iw\mathcal{F}(e^{-x^2})\\ &= -\frac{1}{2}iw\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}e^{-w^2/4}\\ &= -\frac{iw}{2\sqrt{2}}e^{-w^2/4}.\end{aligned}$$

Convolution

The **convolution** $f * g$ of functions f and g is defined by

$$h(x) = (f * g)(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(p)g(x-p)\,dp = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x-p)g(p)\,dp. \tag{11}$$

The purpose is the same as in the case of Laplace transforms (Sec. 6.5): taking the convolution of two functions and then taking the transform of the convolution is the same as multiplying the transforms of these functions (and multiplying them by $\sqrt{2\pi}$):

THEOREM 4 **Convolution Theorem**

Suppose that $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ are piecewise continuous, bounded, and absolutely integrable on the x-axis. Then

$$\mathcal{F}(f * g) = \sqrt{2\pi}\,\mathcal{F}(f)\,\mathcal{F}(g). \tag{12}$$

PROOF By the definition,

$$\mathcal{F}(f * g) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(p) g(x-p)\, dp\, e^{-iwx}\, dx.$$

An interchange of the order of integration gives

$$\mathcal{F}(f * g) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(p) g(x-p) e^{-iwx}\, dx\, dp.$$

Instead of x we now take $x - p = q$ as a new variable of integration. Then $x = p + q$ and

$$\mathcal{F}(f * g) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(p) g(q) e^{-iw(p+q)}\, dq\, dp.$$

This double integral can be written as a product of two integrals and gives the desired result

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{F}(f * g) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(p) e^{-iwp}\, dp \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(q) e^{-iwq}\, dq \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} [\sqrt{2\pi}\, \mathcal{F}(f)][\sqrt{2\pi}\, \mathcal{F}(g)] = \sqrt{2\pi}\, \mathcal{F}(f)\mathcal{F}(g). \qquad \blacksquare
\end{aligned}$$

By taking the inverse Fourier transform on both sides of (12), writing $\hat{f} = \mathcal{F}(f)$ and $\hat{g} = \mathcal{F}(g)$ as before, and noting that $\sqrt{2\pi}$ and $1/\sqrt{2\pi}$ in (12) and (7) cancel each other, we obtain

(13)
$$\boxed{(f * g)(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{f}(w)\hat{g}(w) e^{iwx}\, dw,}$$

a formula that will help us in solving partial differential equations (Sec. 12.6).

Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT), Fast Fourier Transform (FFT)

In using Fourier series, Fourier transforms, and trigonometric approximations (Sec. 11.6) we have to assume that a function $f(x)$, to be developed or transformed, is given on some interval, over which we integrate in the Euler formulas, etc. Now very often a function $f(x)$ is given only in terms of values at finitely many points, and one is interested in extending Fourier analysis to this case. The main application of such a "discrete Fourier analysis" concerns large amounts of equally spaced data, as they occur in telecommunication, time series analysis, and various simulation problems. In these situations, dealing with sampled values rather than with functions, we can replace the Fourier transform by the so-called **discrete Fourier transform (DFT)** as follows.

Let $f(x)$ be periodic, for simplicity of period 2π. We assume that N measurements of $f(x)$ are taken over the interval $0 \leqq x \leqq 2\pi$ at regularly spaced points

$$x_k = \frac{2\pi k}{N}, \qquad k = 0, 1, \cdots, N-1. \tag{14}$$

We also say that $f(x)$ is being **sampled** at these points. We now want to determine a **complex trigonometric polynomial**

$$q(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} c_n e^{inx_k} \tag{15}$$

that **interpolates** $f(x)$ at the nodes (14), that is, $q(x_k) = f(x_k)$, written out, with f_k denoting $f(x_k)$,

$$f_k = f(x_k) = q(x_k) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} c_n e^{inx_k}, \qquad k = 0, 1, \cdots, N-1. \tag{16}$$

Hence we must determine the coefficients $c_0, \cdots, c_{N-1}$ such that (16) holds. We do this by an idea similar to that in Sec. 11.1 for deriving the Fourier coefficients by using the orthogonality of the trigonometric system. Instead of integrals we now take sums. Namely, we multiply (16) by e^{-imx_k} (note the minus!) and sum over k from 0 to $N-1$. Then we interchange the order of the two summations and insert x_k from (14). This gives

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} f_k e^{-imx_k} = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} c_n e^{i(n-m)x_k} = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} c_n \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} e^{i(n-m)2\pi k/N}. \tag{17}$$

Now

$$e^{i(n-m)2\pi k/N} = [e^{i(n-m)2\pi/N}]^k.$$

We donote $[\cdots]$ by r. For $n = m$ we have $r = e^0 = 1$. The sum of *these* terms over k equals N, the number of these terms. For $n \neq m$ we have $r \neq 1$ and by the formula for a geometric sum [(6) in Sec. 15.1 with $q = r$ and $n = N - 1$]

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} r^k = \frac{1 - r^N}{1 - r} = 0$$

because $r^N = 1$; indeed, since k, m, and n are integers,

$$r^N = e^{i(n-m)2\pi k} = \cos 2\pi k(n-m) + i \sin 2\pi k(n-m) = 1 + 0 = 1.$$

This shows that the right side of (17) equals $c_m N$. Writing n for m and dividing by N, we thus obtain the desired coefficient formula

$$\boxed{c_n = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} f_k e^{-inx_k}} \qquad f_k = f(x_k), \quad n = 0, 1, \cdots, N-1. \tag{18*}$$

Since computation of the c_n (by the fast Fourier transform, below) involves successive halfing of the problem size N, it is practical to drop the factor $1/N$ from c_n and define the

discrete Fourier transform of the given signal $\mathbf{f} = [f_0 \quad \cdots \quad f_{N-1}]^\mathsf{T}$ to be the vector $\hat{\mathbf{f}} = [\hat{f}_0 \quad \cdots \quad \hat{f}_{N-1}]$ with components

$$\textbf{(18)} \qquad \hat{f}_n = Nc_n = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} f_k e^{-inx_k}, \qquad f_k = f(x_k), \quad n = 0, \cdots, N-1.$$

This is the frequency spectrum of the signal.

In vector notation, $\hat{\mathbf{f}} = \mathbf{F}_N \mathbf{f}$, where the $N \times N$ **Fourier matrix** $\mathbf{F}_N = [e_{nk}]$ has the entries [given in (18)]

$$(19) \qquad e_{nk} = e^{-inx_k} = e^{-2\pi ink/N} = w^{nk}, \qquad w = w_N = e^{-2\pi i/N},$$

where $n, k = 0, \cdots, N-1$.

EXAMPLE 4 Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT). Sample of $N = 4$ Values

Let $N = 4$ measurements (sample values) be given. Then $w = e^{-2\pi i/N} = e^{-\pi i/2} = -i$ and thus $w^{nk} = (-i)^{nk}$. Let the sample values be, say $\mathbf{f} = [0 \quad 1 \quad 4 \quad 9]^\mathsf{T}$. Then by (18) and (19),

$$(20) \qquad \hat{\mathbf{f}} = \mathbf{F}_4 \mathbf{f} = \begin{bmatrix} w^0 & w^0 & w^0 & w^0 \\ w^0 & w^1 & w^2 & w^3 \\ w^0 & w^2 & w^4 & w^6 \\ w^0 & w^3 & w^6 & w^9 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{f} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -i & -1 & i \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & i & -1 & -i \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 4 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 14 \\ -4+8i \\ -6 \\ -4-8i \end{bmatrix}.$$

From the first matrix in (20) it is easy to infer what $\mathbf{F}_N$ looks like for arbitrary N, which in practice may be 1000 or more, for reasons given below. ■

From the DFT (the frequency spectrum) $\hat{\mathbf{f}} = \mathbf{F}_N \mathbf{f}$ we can recreate the given signal $\hat{\mathbf{f}} = \mathbf{F}_N^{-1} \mathbf{f}$, as we shall now prove. Here $\mathbf{F}_N$ and its complex conjugate $\overline{\mathbf{F}}_N = \frac{1}{N} [\overline{w}^{nk}]$ satisfy

$$(21\text{a}) \qquad \overline{\mathbf{F}}_N \mathbf{F}_N = \mathbf{F}_N \overline{\mathbf{F}}_N = N\mathbf{I}$$

where $\mathbf{I}$ is the $N \times N$ unit matrix; hence $\mathbf{F}_N$ has the inverse

$$(21\text{b}) \qquad \mathbf{F}_N^{-1} = \frac{1}{N} \overline{\mathbf{F}}_N.$$

PROOF We prove (21). By the multiplication rule (row times column) the product matrix $\mathbf{G}_N = \overline{\mathbf{F}}_N \mathbf{F}_N = [g_{jk}]$ in (21a) has the entries $g_{jk} =$ *Row j of* $\overline{\mathbf{F}}_N$ *times Column k of* $\mathbf{F}_N$. That is, writing $W = \overline{w}^j w^k$, we prove that

$$\begin{aligned} g_{jk} &= (\overline{w}^j w^k)^0 + (\overline{w}^j w^k)^1 + \cdots + (\overline{w}^j w^k)^{N-1} \\ &= W^0 + W^1 + \cdots + W^{N-1} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if} \quad j \neq k \\ N & \text{if} \quad j = k. \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

Indeed, when $j = k$, then $\overline{w}^k w^k = (\overline{w}w)^k = (e^{2\pi i/N}e^{-2\pi i/N})^k = 1^k = 1$, so that the sum of *these* N terms equals N; these are the diagonal entries of $\mathbf{G}_N$. Also, when $j \neq k$, then $W \neq 1$ and we have a geometric sum (whose value is given by (6) in Sec. 15.1 with $q = W$ and $n = N - 1$)

$$W^0 + W^1 + \cdots + W^{N-1} = \frac{1 - W^N}{1 - W} = 0$$

because $W^N = (\overline{w}^j w^k)^N = (e^{2\pi i})^j (e^{-2\pi i})^k = 1^j \cdot 1^k = 1$. ■

We have seen that $\hat{\mathbf{f}}$ is the frequency spectrum of the signal $f(x)$. Thus the components $\hat{f}_n$ of $\hat{\mathbf{f}}$ give a resolution of the 2π-periodic function $f(x)$ into simple (complex) harmonics. Here one should use only n's that are much smaller than $N/2$, to avoid **aliasing**. By this we mean the effect caused by sampling at too few (equally spaced) points, so that, for instance, in a motion picture, rotating wheels appear as rotating too slowly or even in the wrong sense. Hence in applications, N is usually large. But this poses a problem. Eq. (18) requires $O(N)$ operations for any particular n, hence $O(N^2)$ operations for, say, all $n < N/2$. Thus, already for 1000 sample points the straightforward calculation would involve millions of operations. However, this difficulty can be overcome by the so-called **fast Fourier transform (FFT)**, for which codes are readily available (e.g., in Maple). The FFT is a computational method for the DFT that needs only $O(N)\log_2 N$ operations instead of $O(N^2)$. It makes the DFT a practical tool for large N. Here one chooses $N = 2^p$ (p integer) and uses the special form of the Fourier matrix to break down the given problem into smaller problems. For instance, when $N = 1000$, those operations are reduced by a factor $1000/\log_2 1000 \approx 100$.

The breakdown produces two problems of size $M = N/2$. This breakdown is possible because for $N = 2M$ we have in (19)

$$w_N^2 = w_{2M}^2 = (e^{-2\pi i/N})^2 = e^{-4\pi i/(2M)} = e^{-2\pi i/(M)} = w_M.$$

The given vector $\mathbf{f} = [f_0 \ \cdots \ f_{N-1}]^\mathsf{T}$ is split into two vectors with M components each, namely, $\mathbf{f}_{\text{ev}} = [f_0 \ f_2 \ \cdots \ f_{N-2}]^\mathsf{T}$ containing the even components of $\mathbf{f}$, and $\mathbf{f}_{\text{od}} = [f_1 \ f_3 \ \cdots \ f_{N-1}]^\mathsf{T}$ containing the odd components of $\mathbf{f}$. For $\mathbf{f}_{\text{ev}}$ and $\mathbf{f}_{\text{od}}$ we determine the DFTs

$$\hat{\mathbf{f}}_{\text{ev}} = [\hat{f}_{\text{ev},0} \quad \hat{f}_{\text{ev},2} \quad \cdots \quad \hat{f}_{\text{ev},N-2}]^\mathsf{T} = \mathbf{F}_M \mathbf{f}_{\text{ev}}$$

and

$$\hat{\mathbf{f}}_{\text{od}} = [\hat{f}_{\text{od},1} \quad \hat{f}_{\text{od},3} \quad \cdots \quad \hat{f}_{\text{od},N-1}]^\mathsf{T} = \mathbf{F}_M \mathbf{f}_{\text{od}}$$

involving the same $M \times M$ matrix $\mathbf{F}_M$. From these vectors we obtain the components of the DFT of the given vector f by the formulas

$$\text{(22)} \qquad \begin{aligned} &\text{(a)} & \hat{f}_n &= \hat{f}_{\text{ev},n} + w_N^n \hat{f}_{\text{od},n} & n &= 0, \cdots, M - 1 \\ &\text{(b)} & \hat{f}_{n+M} &= \hat{f}_{\text{ev},n} - w_N^n \hat{f}_{\text{od},n} & n &= 0, \cdots, M - 1. \end{aligned}$$

For $N = 2^p$ this breakdown can be repeated $p - 1$ times in order to finally arrive at $N/2$ problems of size 2 each, so that the number of multiplications is reduced as indicated above.

We show the reduction from $N = 4$ to $M = N/2 = 2$ and then prove (22).

EXAMPLE 5 Fast Fourier Transform (FFT). Sample of $N = 4$ Values

When $N = 4$, then $w = w_N = -i$ as in Example 4 and $M = N/2 = 2$, hence $w = w_M = e^{-2\pi i/2} = e^{-\pi i} = -1$. Consequently,

$$\hat{\mathbf{f}}_{\text{ev}} = \begin{bmatrix} \hat{f}_0 \\ \hat{f}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{F}_2\mathbf{f}_{\text{ev}} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} f_0 \\ f_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} f_0 + f_2 \\ f_0 - f_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{f}}_{\text{od}} = \begin{bmatrix} \hat{f}_1 \\ \hat{f}_3 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{F}_2\mathbf{f}_{\text{od}} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} f_1 \\ f_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} f_1 + f_3 \\ f_1 - f_3 \end{bmatrix}.$$

From this and (22a) we obtain

$$\hat{f}_0 = \hat{f}_{\text{ev},0} + w_N^0 \hat{f}_{\text{od},0} = (f_0 + f_2) + (f_1 + f_3) = f_0 + f_1 + f_2 + f_3$$
$$\hat{f}_1 = \hat{f}_{\text{ev},1} + w_N^1 \hat{f}_{\text{od},1} = (f_0 - f_2) - i(f_1 + f_3) = f_0 - if_1 - f_2 + if_3.$$

Similarly, by (22b),

$$\hat{f}_2 = \hat{f}_{\text{ev},0} - w_N^0 \hat{f}_{\text{od},0} = (f_0 + f_2) - (f_1 + f_3) = f_0 - f_1 + f_2 - f_3$$
$$\hat{f}_3 = \hat{f}_{\text{ev},1} - w_N^1 \hat{f}_{\text{od},1} = (f_0 - f_2) - (-i)(f_1 - f_3) = f_0 + if_1 - f_2 - if_3.$$

This agrees with Example 4, as can be seen by replacing 0, 1, 4, 9 with f_0, f_1, f_2, f_3. ■

We prove (22). From (18) and (19) we have for the components of the DFT

$$\hat{f}_n = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w_N^{kn} f_k.$$

Splitting into two sums of $M = N/2$ terms each gives

$$\hat{f}_n = \sum_{k=0}^{M-1} w_N^{2kn} f_{2k} + \sum_{k=0}^{M-1} w_N^{(2k+1)n} f_{2k+1}.$$

We now use $w_N^2 = w_M$ and pull out w_N^n from under the second sum, obtaining

$$\hat{f}_n = \sum_{k=0}^{M-1} w_M^{kn} f_{\text{ev},k} + w_N^n \sum_{k=0}^{M-1} w_M^{kn} f_{\text{od},k}. \tag{23}$$

The two sums are $f_{\text{ev},n}$ and $f_{\text{od},n}$, the components of the "half-size" transforms $\mathbf{Ff}_{\text{ev}}$ and $\mathbf{Ff}_{\text{od}}$.

Formula (22a) is the same as (23). In (22b) we have $n + M$ instead of n. This causes a sign changes in (23), namely $-w_N^n$ before the second sum because

$$w_N^M = e^{-2\pi iM/N} = e^{-2\pi i/2} = e^{-\pi i} = -1.$$

This gives the minus in (22b) and completes the proof. ■

PROBLEM SET 11.9

1. Review in complex. Show that $1/i = -i$, $e^{-ix} = \cos x - i \sin x$, $e^{ix} + e^{-ix} = 2 \cos x$, $e^{ix} - e^{-ix} = 2i \sin x$, $e^{ikx} = \cos kx + i \sin kx$.

2–11 FOURIER TRANSFORMS BY INTEGRATION

Find the Fourier transform of $f(x)$ (without using Table III in Sec. 11.10). Show details.

2. $f(x) = \begin{cases} e^{2ix} & \text{if } -1 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

3. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } a < x < b \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

4. $f(x) = \begin{cases} e^{kx} & \text{if } x < 0 \quad (k > 0) \\ 0 & \text{if } x > 0 \end{cases}$

5. $f(x) = \begin{cases} e^{x} & \text{if } -a < x < a \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

6. $f(x) = e^{-|x|} \quad (-\infty < x < \infty)$

7. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } 0 < x < a \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

8. $f(x) = \begin{cases} xe^{-x} & \text{if } -1 < x < 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

9. $f(x) = \begin{cases} |x| & \text{if } -1 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

10. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } -1 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

11. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{if } -1 < x < 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } 0 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

12–17 USE OF TABLE III IN SEC. 11.10. OTHER METHODS

12. Find $\mathcal{F}(f(x))$ for $f(x) = xe^{-x}$ if $x > 0$, $f(x) = 0$ if $x < 0$, by (9) in the text and formula 5 in Table III (with $a = 1$). *Hint.* Consider xe^{-x} and e^{-x}.

13. Obtain $\mathcal{F}(e^{-x^2/2})$ from Table III.

14. In Table III obtain formula 7 from formula 8.

15. In Table III obtain formula 1 from formula 2.

16. TEAM PROJECT. Shifting (a) Show that if $f(x)$ has a Fourier transform, so does $f(x - a)$, and $\mathcal{F}\{f(x - a)\} = e^{-iwa}\mathcal{F}\{f(x)\}$.

(b) Using (a), obtain formula 1 in Table III, Sec. 11.10, from formula 2.

(c) Shifting on the *w*-Axis. Show that if $\hat{f}(w)$ is the Fourier transform of $f(x)$, then $\hat{f}(w - a)$ is the Fourier transform of $e^{iax}f(x)$.

(d) Using (c), obtain formula 7 in Table III from 1 and formula 8 from 2.

17. What could give you the idea to solve Prob. 11 by using the solution of Prob. 9 and formula (9) in the text? Would this work?

18–25 DISCRETE FOURIER TRANSFORM

18. Verify the calculations in Example 4 of the text.

19. Find the transform of a general signal $f = [f_1 \quad f_2 \quad f_3 \quad f_4]^{\mathsf{T}}$ of four values.

20. Find the inverse matrix in Example 4 of the text and use it to recover the given signal.

21. Find the transform (the frequency spectrum) of a general signal of two values $[f_1 \quad f_2]^{\mathsf{T}}$.

22. Recreate the given signal in Prob. 21 from the frequency spectrum obtained.

23. Show that for a signal of eight sample values, $w = e^{-i/4} = (1 - i)/\sqrt{2}$. Check by squaring.

24. Write the Fourier matrix $\mathbf{F}$ for a sample of eight values explicitly.

25. CAS Problem. Calculate the inverse of the 8×8 Fourier matrix. Transform a general sample of eight values and transform it back to the given data.

11.10 Tables of Transforms

Table I. Fourier Cosine Transforms

See (2) in Sec. 11.8.

	$f(x)$	$\hat{f}_c(w) = \mathcal{F}_c(f)$
1	$\begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 0 < x < a \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\,\frac{\sin aw}{w}$
2	$x^{a-1} \quad (0 < a < 1)$	$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\,\frac{\Gamma(a)}{w^a}\cos\frac{a\pi}{2}$ ($\Gamma(a)$ see App. A3.1.)
3	$e^{-ax} \quad (a > 0)$	$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\left(\frac{a}{a^2 + w^2}\right)$
4	$e^{-x^2/2}$	$e^{-w^2/2}$
5	$e^{-ax^2} \quad (a > 0)$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2a}}\,e^{-w^2/(4a)}$
6	$x^n e^{-ax} \quad (a > 0)$	$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\,\frac{n!}{(a^2 + w^2)^{n+1}}\,\mathrm{Re}\,(a + iw)^{n+1}$ Re = Real part
7	$\begin{cases} \cos x & \text{if } 0 < x < a \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[\frac{\sin a(1 - w)}{1 - w} + \frac{\sin a(1 + w)}{1 + w}\right]$
8	$\cos(ax^2) \quad (a > 0)$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2a}}\cos\left(\frac{w^2}{4a} - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$
9	$\sin(ax^2) \quad (a > 0)$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2a}}\cos\left(\frac{w^2}{4a} + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$
10	$\frac{\sin ax}{x} \quad (a > 0)$	$\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}}\,(1 - u(w - a))$ (See Sec. 6.3.)
11	$\frac{e^{-x}\sin x}{x}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\arctan\frac{2}{w^2}$
12	$J_0(ax) \quad (a > 0)$	$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\,\frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 - w^2}}\,(1 - u(w - a))$ (See Secs. 5.5, 6.3.)

Table II. Fourier Sine Transforms

See (5) in Sec. 11.8.

	$f(x)$	$\hat{f}_s(w) = \mathcal{F}_s(f)$	
1	$\begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 0 < x < a \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \left[\frac{1 - \cos aw}{w} \right]$	
2	$1/\sqrt{x}$	$1/\sqrt{w}$	
3	$1/x^{3/2}$	$2\sqrt{w}$	
4	$x^{a-1} \quad (0 < a < 1)$	$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\Gamma(a)}{w^a} \sin \frac{a\pi}{2}$	($\Gamma(a)$ see App. A3.1.)
5	$e^{-ax} \quad (a > 0)$	$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \left(\frac{w}{a^2 + w^2} \right)$	
6	$\frac{e^{-ax}}{x} \quad (a > 0)$	$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \arctan \frac{w}{a}$	
7	$x^n e^{-ax} \quad (a > 0)$	$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{n!}{(a^2 + w^2)^{n+1}} \operatorname{Im}(a + iw)^{n+1}$	Im = Imaginary part
8	$xe^{-x^2/2}$	$we^{-w^2/2}$	
9	$xe^{-ax^2} \quad (a > 0)$	$\frac{w}{(2a)^{3/2}} e^{-w^2/4a}$	
10	$\begin{cases} \sin x & \text{if } 0 < x < a \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left[\frac{\sin a(1 - w)}{1 - w} - \frac{\sin a(1 + w)}{1 + w} \right]$	
11	$\frac{\cos ax}{x} \quad (a > 0)$	$\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}}\, u(w - a)$	(See Sec. 6.3.)
12	$\arctan \frac{2a}{x} \quad (a > 0)$	$\sqrt{2\pi} \frac{\sin aw}{w} e^{-aw}$	

Table III. Fourier Transforms

See (6) in Sec. 11.9.

	$f(x)$	$\hat{f}(w) = \mathcal{F}(f)$
1	$\begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } -b < x < b \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\sin bw}{w}$
2	$\begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } b < x < c \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	$\frac{e^{-ibw} - e^{-icw}}{iw\sqrt{2\pi}}$
3	$\frac{1}{x^2 + a^2} \quad (a > 0)$	$\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{e^{-a\|w\|}}{a}$
4	$\begin{cases} x & \text{if } 0 < x < b \\ 2x - b & \text{if } b < x < 2b \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	$\frac{-1 + 2e^{ibw} - e^{-2ibw}}{\sqrt{2\pi}w^2}$
5	$\begin{cases} e^{-ax} & \text{if } x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (a > 0)$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}(a + iw)}$
6	$\begin{cases} e^{ax} & \text{if } b < x < c \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	$\frac{e^{(a-iw)c} - e^{(a-iw)b}}{\sqrt{2\pi}(a - iw)}$
7	$\begin{cases} e^{iax} & \text{if } -b < x < b \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\sin b(w - a)}{w - a}$
8	$\begin{cases} e^{iax} & \text{if } b < x < c \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	$\frac{i}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{e^{ib(a-w)} - e^{ic(a-w)}}{a - w}$
9	$e^{-ax^2} \quad (a > 0)$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2a}} e^{-w^2/4a}$
10	$\frac{\sin ax}{x} \quad (a > 0)$	$\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}}$ if $\|w\| < a$; 0 if $\|w\| > a$

CHAPTER 11 REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS

1. What is a Fourier series? A Fourier cosine series? A half-range expansion? Answer from memory.
2. What are the Euler formulas? By what very important idea did we obtain them?
3. How did we proceed from 2π-periodic to general-periodic functions?
4. Can a discontinuous function have a Fourier series? A Taylor series? Why are such functions of interest to the engineer?
5. What do you know about convergence of a Fourier series? About the Gibbs phenomenon?
6. The output of an ODE can oscillate several times as fast as the input. How come?
7. What is approximation by trigonometric polynomials? What is the minimum square error?
8. What is a Fourier integral? A Fourier sine integral? Give simple examples.
9. What is the Fourier transform? The discrete Fourier transform?
10. What are Sturm–Liouville problems? By what idea are they related to Fourier series?

11–20 FOURIER SERIES. In Probs. 11, 13, 16, 20 find the Fourier series of $f(x)$ as given over one period and sketch $f(x)$ and partial sums. In Probs. 12, 14, 15, 17–19 give answers, with reasons. Show your work detail.

11. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if} \quad -2 < x < 0 \\ 2 & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < 2 \end{cases}$
12. Why does the series in Prob. 11 have no cosine terms?
13. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if} \quad -1 < x < 0 \\ x & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < 1 \end{cases}$
14. What function does the series of the cosine terms in Prob. 13 represent? The series of the sine terms?
15. What function do the series of the cosine terms and the series of the sine terms in the Fourier series of e^x $(-5 < x < 5)$ represent?
16. $f(x) = |x| \quad (-\pi < x < \pi)$
17. Find a Fourier series from which you can conclude that $1 - 1/3 + 1/5 - 1/7 + - \cdots = \pi/4$.
18. What function and series do you obtain in Prob. 16 by (termwise) differentiation?
19. Find the half-range expansions of $f(x) = x$ $(0 < x < 1)$.
20. $f(x) = 3x^2 \quad (-\pi < x < \pi)$

21–22 GENERAL SOLUTION

Solve, $y'' + \omega^2 y = r(t)$, where $|\omega| \neq 0, 1, 2, \cdots, r(t)$ is 2π-periodic and

21. $r(t) = 3t^2 \ (-\pi < t < \pi)$
22. $r(t) = |t| \ (-\pi < t < \pi)$

23–25 MINIMUM SQUARE ERROR

23. Compute the minimum square error for $f(x) = x/\pi$ $(-\pi < x < \pi)$ and trigonometric polynomials of degree $N = 1, \cdots, 5$.
24. How does the minimum square error change if you multiply $f(x)$ by a constant k?
25. Same task as in Prob. 23, for $f(x) = |x|/\pi$ $(-\pi < x < \pi)$. Why is E^* now much smaller (by a factor 100, approximately!)?

26–30 FOURIER INTEGRALS AND TRANSFORMS

Sketch the given function and represent it as indicated. If you have a CAS, graph approximate curves obtained by replacing ∞ with finite limits; also look for Gibbs phenomena.

26. $f(x) = x + 1$ if $0 < x < 1$ and 0 otherwise; by the Fourier sine transform
27. $f(x) = x$ if $0 < x < 1$ and 0 otherwise; by the Fourier integral
28. $f(x) = kx$ if $a < x < b$ and 0 otherwise; by the Fourier transform
29. $f(x) = x$ if $1 < x < a$ and 0 otherwise; by the Fourier cosine transform
30. $f(x) = e^{-2x}$ if $x > 0$ and 0 otherwise; by the Fourier transform

SUMMARY OF CHAPTER 11

Fourier Analysis. Partial Differential Equations (PDEs)

Fourier series concern **periodic functions** $f(x)$ of period $p = 2L$, that is, by definition $f(x + p) = f(x)$ for all x and some fixed $p > 0$; thus, $f(x + np) = f(x)$ for any integer n. These series are of the form

$$f(x) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(a_n \cos \frac{n\pi}{L} x + b_n \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x \right) \qquad (1) \quad \text{(Sec. 11.2)}$$

with coefficients, called the **Fourier coefficients** of $f(x)$, given by the Euler formulas (Sec. 11.2)

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{2L} \int_{-L}^{L} f(x)\, dx, \qquad a_n = \frac{1}{L} \int_{-L}^{L} f(x) \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L}\, dx$$

$$(2) \qquad b_n = \frac{1}{L} \int_{-L}^{L} f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}\, dx$$

where $n = 1, 2, \cdots$. For period 2π we simply have (Sec. 11.1)

$$f(x) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx) \qquad (1^*)$$

with the *Fourier coefficients* of $f(x)$ (Sec. 11.1)

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)\, dx, \quad a_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) \cos nx\, dx, \quad b_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) \sin nx\, dx.$$

Fourier series are fundamental in connection with periodic phenomena, particularly in models involving differential equations (Sec. 11.3, Chap, 12). If $f(x)$ is even $[f(-x) = f(x)]$ or odd $[f(-x) = -f(x)]$, they reduce to **Fourier cosine** or **Fourier sine series**, respectively (Sec. 11.2). If $f(x)$ is given for $0 \leqq x \leqq L$ only, it has two **half-range expansions** of period $2L$, namely, a cosine and a sine series (Sec. 11.2).

The set of cosine and sine functions in (1) is called the **trigonometric system**. Its most basic property is its **orthogonality** on an interval of length $2L$; that is, for all integers m and $n \neq m$ we have

$$\int_{-L}^{L} \cos \frac{m\pi x}{L} \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L}\, dx = 0, \qquad \int_{-L}^{L} \sin \frac{m\pi x}{L} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}\, dx = 0$$

and for all integers m and n,

$$\int_{-L}^{L} \cos \frac{m\pi x}{L} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}\, dx = 0.$$

This orthogonality was crucial in deriving the Euler formulas (2).

Partial sums of Fourier series minimize the **square error** (Sec. 11.4).

Replacing the trigonometric system in (1) by other orthogonal systems first leads to ***Sturm–Liouville problems*** (Sec. 11.5), which are boundary value problems for ODEs. These problems are ***eigenvalue problems*** and as such involve a parameter λ that is often related to frequencies and energies. The solutions to Sturm–Liouville problems are called ***eigenfunctions***. Similar considerations lead to other orthogonal series such as ***Fourier–Legendre series*** and ***Fourier–Bessel series*** classified as ***generalized Fourier series*** (Sec. 11.6).

Ideas and techniques of Fourier series extend to nonperiodic functions $f(x)$ defined on the entire real line; this leads to the **Fourier integral**

$$f(x) = \int_0^\infty [A(w)\cos wx + B(w)\sin wx]\,dw \qquad \text{(Sec. 11.7)} \tag{3}$$

where

$$A(w) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v)\cos wv\,dv, \qquad B(w) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v)\sin wv\,dv \tag{4}$$

or, in complex form (Sec. 11.9),

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{f}(w)e^{iwx}\,dw \qquad (i = \sqrt{-1}) \tag{5}$$

where

$$\hat{f}(w) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{-iwx}\,dx. \tag{6}$$

Formula (6) transforms $f(x)$ into its **Fourier transform** $\hat{f}(w)$, and (5) is the inverse transform.

Related to this are the **Fourier cosine transform** (Sec. 11.8)

$$\hat{f}_c(w) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\int_0^\infty f(x)\cos wx\,dx \tag{7}$$

and the **Fourier sine transform** (Sec. 11.8)

$$\hat{f}_s(w) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\int_0^\infty f(x)\sin wx\,dx\,. \tag{8}$$

The ***discrete Fourier transform (DFT)*** and a practical method of computing it, called the ***fast Fourier transform (FFT)***, are discussed in Sec. 11.9.

CHAPTER 12

Partial Differential Equations (PDEs)

A PDE is an equation that contains one or more partial derivatives of an unknown function that depends on at least two variables. Usually one of these deals with time t and the remaining with space (spatial variable(s)). The most important PDEs are the wave equations that can model the vibrating string (Secs. 12.2, 12.3, 12.4, 12.12) and the vibrating membrane (Secs. 12.8, 12.9, 12.10), the heat equation for temperature in a bar or wire (Secs. 12.5, 12.6), and the Laplace equation for electrostatic potentials (Secs. 12.6, 12.10, 12.11). PDEs are very important in dynamics, elasticity, heat transfer, electromagnetic theory, and quantum mechanics. They have a much wider range of applications than ODEs, which can model only the simplest physical systems. Thus PDEs are subjects of many ongoing research and development projects.

Realizing that modeling with PDEs is more involved than modeling with ODEs, we take a gradual, well-planned approach to modeling with PDEs. To do this we carefully derive the PDE that models the phenomena, such as the one-dimensional wave equation for a vibrating elastic string (say a violin string) in Sec. 12.2, and then solve the PDE in a separate section, that is, Sec. 12.3. In a similar vein, we derive the heat equation in Sec. 12.5 and then solve and generalize it in Sec. 12.6.

We derive these PDEs from physics and consider methods for solving initial and boundary value problems, that is, methods of obtaining solutions which satisfy the conditions required by the physical situations. In Secs. 12.7 and 12.12 we show how PDEs can also be solved by Fourier and Laplace transform methods.

COMMENT. ***Numerics for PDEs*** is explained in Secs. 21.4–21.7, which, for greater teaching flexibility, is designed to be independent of the other sections on numerics in Part E.

Prerequisites: Linear ODEs (Chap. 2), Fourier series (Chap. 11).
Sections that may be omitted in a shorter course: 12.7, 12.10–12.12.
References and Answers to Problems: App. 1 Part C, App. 2.

12.1 Basic Concepts of PDEs

A **partial differential equation (PDE)** is an equation involving one or more partial derivatives of an (unknown) function, call it u, that depends on two or more variables, often time t and one or several variables in space. The order of the highest derivative is called the **order** of the PDE. Just as was the case for ODEs, second-order PDEs will be the most important ones in applications.

Just as for ordinary differential equations (ODEs) we say that a PDE is **linear** if it is of the first degree in the unknown function u and its partial derivatives. Otherwise we call it **nonlinear**. Thus, all the equations in Example 1 are linear. We call a *linear* PDE **homogeneous** if each of its terms contains either u or one of its partial derivatives. Otherwise we call the equation **nonhomogeneous**. Thus, (4) in Example 1 (with f not identically zero) is nonhomogeneous, whereas the other equations are homogeneous.

EXAMPLE 1 Important Second-Order PDEs

(1) $$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$ ***One-dimensional wave equation***

(2) $$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$ ***One-dimensional heat equation***

(3) $$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = 0$$ ***Two-dimensional Laplace equation***

(4) $$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = f(x, y)$$ ***Two-dimensional Poisson equation***

(5) $$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}\right)$$ ***Two-dimensional wave equation***

(6) $$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = 0$$ ***Three-dimensional Laplace equation***

Here c is a positive constant, t is time, x, y, z are Cartesian coordinates, and *dimension* is the number of these coordinates in the equation. ■

A **solution** of a PDE in some region R of the space of the independent variables is a function that has all the partial derivatives appearing in the PDE in some domain D (definition in Sec. 9.6) containing R, and satisfies the PDE everywhere in R.

Often one merely requires that the function is continuous on the boundary of R, has those derivatives in the interior of R, and satisfies the PDE in the interior of R. Letting R lie in D simplifies the situation regarding derivatives on the boundary of R, which is then the same on the boundary as it is in the interior of R.

In general, the totality of solutions of a PDE is very large. For example, the functions

(7) $$u = x^2 - y^2, \qquad u = e^x \cos y, \qquad u = \sin x \cosh y, \qquad u = \ln (x^2 + y^2)$$

which are entirely different from each other, are solutions of (3), as you may verify. We shall see later that the unique solution of a PDE corresponding to a given physical problem will be obtained by the use of ***additional conditions*** arising from the problem. For instance, this may be the condition that the solution u assume given values on the boundary of the region R ("**boundary conditions**"). Or, when time t is one of the variables, u (or $u_t = \partial u/\partial t$ or both) may be prescribed at $t = 0$ ("**initial conditions**").

We know that if an ODE is linear and homogeneous, then from known solutions we can obtain further solutions by superposition. For PDEs the situation is quite similar:

THEOREM 1 Fundamental Theorem on Superposition

*If u_1 and u_2 are solutions of a **homogeneous linear** PDE in some region R, then*

$$u = c_1 u_1 + c_2 u_2$$

with any constants c_1 and c_2 is also a solution of that PDE in the region R.

The simple proof of this important theorem is quite similar to that of Theorem 1 in Sec. 2.1 and is left to the student.

Verification of solutions in Probs. 2–13 proceeds as for ODEs. Problems 16–23 concern PDEs solvable like ODEs. To help the student with them, we consider two typical examples.

EXAMPLE 2 **Solving $u_{xx} - u = 0$ Like an ODE**

Find solutions u of the PDE $u_{xx} - u = 0$ depending on x and y.

Solution. Since no y-derivatives occur, we can solve this PDE like $u'' - u = 0$. In Sec. 2.2 we would have obtained $u = Ae^x + Be^{-x}$ with constant A and B. Here A and B may be functions of y, so that the answer is

$$u(x, y) = A(y)e^x + B(y)e^{-x}$$

with arbitrary functions A and B. We thus have a great variety of solutions. Check the result by differentiation. ■

EXAMPLE 3 **Solving $u_{xy} = -u_x$ Like an ODE**

Find solutions $u = u(x, y)$ of this PDE.

Solution. Setting $u_x = p$, we have $p_y = -p$, $p_y/p = -1$, $\ln|p| = -y + \tilde{c}(x)$, $p = c(x)e^{-y}$ and by integration with respect to x,

$$u(x, y) = f(x)e^{-y} + g(y) \qquad \text{where} \qquad f(x) = \int c(x)\,dx,$$

here, $f(x)$ and $g(y)$ are arbitrary. ■

PROBLEM SET 12.1

1. Fundamental theorem. Prove it for second-order PDEs in two and three independent variables. *Hint.* Prove it by substitution.

2–13 VERIFICATION OF SOLUTIONS

Verifiy (by substitution) that the given function is a solution of the PDE. Sketch or graph the solution as a surface in space.

2–5 Wave Equation (1) with suitable c

2. $u = x^2 + t^2$

3. $u = \cos 4t \sin 2x$

4. $u = \sin kct \cos kx$

5. $u = \sin at \sin bx$

6–9 Heat Equation (2) with suitable c

6. $u = e^{-t} \sin x$

7. $u = e^{-\omega^2 c^2 t} \cos \omega x$

8. $u = e^{-9t} \sin \omega x$

9. $u = e^{-\pi^2 t} \cos 25x$

10–13 Laplace Equation (3)

10. $u = e^x \cos y, e^x \sin y$

11. $u = \arctan (y/x)$

12. $u = \cos y \sinh x, \sin y \cosh x$

13. $u = x/(x^2 + y^2), y/(x^2 + y^2)$

14. TEAM PROJECT. Verification of Solutions

(a) Wave equation. Verify that $u(x, t) = v(x + ct) + w(x - ct)$ with any twice differentiable functions v and w satisfies (1).

(b) Poisson equation. Verify that each u satisfies (4) with $f(x, y)$ as indicated.

$$\begin{array}{ll} u = y/x & f = 2y/x^3 \\ u = \sin xy & f = (x^2 + y^2) \sin xy \\ u = e^{x^2 - y^2} & f = 4(x^2 + y^2)e^{x^2 - y^2} \\ u = 1/\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} & f = (x^2 + y^2)^{-3/2} \end{array}$$

(c) Laplace equation. Verify that $u = 1/\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$ satisfies (6) and $u = \ln (x^2 + y^2)$ satisfies (3). Is $u = 1/\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ a solution of (3)? Of what Poisson equation?

(d) Verify that u with any (sufficiently often differentiable) v and w satisfies the given PDE.

$$\begin{array}{ll} u = v(x) + w(y) & u_{xy} = 0 \\ u = v(x)w(y) & uu_{xy} = u_x u_y \\ u = v(x + 2t) + w(x - 2t) & u_{tt} = 4u_{xx} \end{array}$$

15. Boundary value problem. Verify that the function $u(x, y) = a \ln (x^2 + y^2) + b$ satisfies Laplace's equation

(3) and determine a and b so that u satisfies the boundary conditions $u = 110$ on the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ and $u = 0$ on the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 100$.

16–23 PDEs SOLVABLE AS ODEs

This happens if a PDE involves derivatives with respect to one variable only (or can be transformed to such a form), so that the other variable(s) can be treated as parameter(s). Solve for $u = u(x, y)$:

16. $u_{yy} = 0$

17. $u_{xx} + 16\pi^2 u = 0$

18. $25u_{yy} - 4u = 0$

19. $u_y + y^2 u = 0$

20. $2u_{xx} + 9u_x + 4u = -3 \cos x - 29 \sin x$

21. $u_{yy} + 6u_y + 13u = 4e^{3y}$

22. $u_{xy} = u_x$

23. $x^2 u_{xx} + 2xu_x - 2u = 0$

24. Surface of revolution. Show that the solutions $z = z(x, y)$ of $yz_x = xz_y$ represent surfaces of revolution. Give examples. *Hint.* Use polar coordinates r, θ and show that the equation becomes $z_\theta = 0$.

25. System of PDEs. Solve $u_{xx} = 0, u_{yy} = 0$

12.2 Modeling: Vibrating String, Wave Equation

In this section we model a vibrating string, which will lead to our first important PDE, that is, equation (3) which will then be solved in Sec. 12.3. *The student should pay very close attention to this delicate modeling process and detailed derivation starting from scratch,* as the skills learned can be applied to modeling other phenomena in general and in particular to modeling a vibrating membrane (Sec. 12.7).

We want to derive the PDE modeling small transverse vibrations of an elastic string, such as a violin string. We place the string along the x-axis, stretch it to length L, and fasten it at the ends $x = 0$ and $x = L$. We then distort the string, and at some instant, call it $t = 0$, we release it and allow it to vibrate. The problem is to determine the vibrations of the string, that is, to find its deflection $u(x, t)$ at any point x and at any time $t > 0$; see Fig. 286.

$u(x, t)$ will be the solution of a PDE that is the model of our physical system to be derived. This PDE should not be too complicated, so that we can solve it. Reasonable simplifying assumptions (just as for ODEs modeling vibrations in Chap. 2) are as follows.

Physical Assumptions

1. The mass of the string per unit length is constant ("homogeneous string"). The string is perfectly elastic and does not offer any resistance to bending.
2. The tension caused by stretching the string before fastening it at the ends is so large that the action of the gravitational force on the string (trying to pull the string down a little) can be neglected.
3. The string performs small transverse motions in a vertical plane; that is, every particle of the string moves strictly vertically and so that the deflection and the slope at every point of the string always remain small in absolute value.

Under these assumptions we may expect solutions $u(x, t)$ that describe the physical reality sufficiently well.

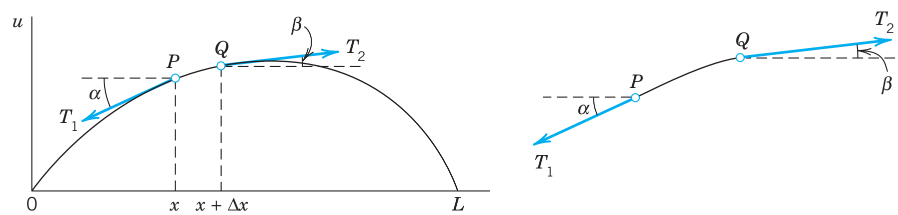


Fig. 286. Deflected string at fixed time t. Explanation on p. 544

Derivation of the PDE of the Model ("Wave Equation") from Forces

The model of the vibrating string will consist of a PDE ("wave equation") and additional conditions. To obtain the PDE, we consider the ***forces acting on a small portion of the string*** (Fig. 286). This method is typical of modeling in mechanics and elsewhere.

Since the string offers no resistance to bending, the tension is tangential to the curve of the string at each point. Let T_1 and T_2 be the tension at the endpoints P and Q of that portion. Since the points of the string move vertically, there is no motion in the horizontal direction. Hence the horizontal components of the tension must be constant. Using the notation shown in Fig. 286, we thus obtain

$$T_1 \cos \alpha = T_2 \cos \beta = T = \text{const.} \tag{1}$$

In the vertical direction we have two forces, namely, the vertical components $-T_1 \sin \alpha$ and $T_2 \sin \beta$ of T_1 and T_2; here the minus sign appears because the component at P is directed downward. By **Newton's second law** (Sec. 2.4) the resultant of these two forces is equal to the mass $\rho \Delta x$ of the portion times the acceleration $\partial^2 u/\partial t^2$, evaluated at some point between x and $x + \Delta x$; here ρ is the mass of the undeflected string per unit length, and Δx is the length of the portion of the undeflected string. (Δ is generally used to denote small quantities; this has nothing to do with the Laplacian ∇^2, which is sometimes also denoted by Δ.) Hence

$$T_2 \sin \beta - T_1 \sin \alpha = \rho \Delta x \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}.$$

Using (1), we can divide this by $T_2 \cos \beta = T_1 \cos \alpha = T$, obtaining

$$\frac{T_2 \sin \beta}{T_2 \cos \beta} - \frac{T_1 \sin \alpha}{T_1 \cos \alpha} = \tan \beta - \tan \alpha = \frac{\rho \Delta x}{T} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}. \tag{2}$$

Now $\tan \alpha$ and $\tan \beta$ are the slopes of the string at x and $x + \Delta x$:

$$\tan \alpha = \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)\bigg|_x \qquad \text{and} \qquad \tan \beta = \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)\bigg|_{x+\Delta x}.$$

Here we have to write *partial* derivatives because u also depends on time t. Dividing (2) by Δx, we thus have

$$\frac{1}{\Delta x}\left[\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)\bigg|_{x+\Delta x} - \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)\bigg|_x\right] = \frac{\rho}{T} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}.$$

If we let Δx approach zero, we obtain the linear PDE

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2},} \qquad c^2 = \frac{T}{\rho}. \tag{3}$$

This is called the **one-dimensional wave equation**. We see that it is homogeneous and of the second order. The physical constant T/ρ is denoted by c^2 (instead of c) to indicate that this constant is *positive,* a fact that will be essential to the form of the solutions. "One-dimensional" means that the equation involves only one space variable, x. In the next section we shall complete setting up the model and then show how to solve it by a general method that is probably the most important one for PDEs in engineering mathematics.

12.3 Solution by Separating Variables. Use of Fourier Series

We continue our work from Sec. 12.2, where we modeled a vibrating string and obtained the one-dimensional wave equation. We now have to complete the model by adding additional conditions and then solving the resulting model.

The model of a vibrating elastic string (a violin string, for instance) consists of the **one-dimensional wave equation**

$$\text{(1)} \qquad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \qquad c^2 = \frac{T}{\rho}$$

for the unknown deflection $u(x, t)$ of the string, a PDE that we have just obtained, and some ***additional conditions***, which we shall now derive.

Since the string is fastened at the ends $x = 0$ and $x = L$ (see Sec. 12.2), we have the two **boundary conditions**

$$\text{(2)} \qquad \text{(a)} \quad u(0, t) = 0, \qquad \text{(b)} \quad u(L, t) = 0, \qquad \text{for all } t \geqq 0.$$

Furthermore, the form of the motion of the string will depend on its *initial deflection* (deflection at time $t = 0$), call it $f(x)$, and on its *initial velocity* (velocity at $t = 0$), call it $g(x)$. We thus have the two **initial conditions**

$$\text{(3)} \qquad \text{(a)} \quad u(x, 0) = f(x), \qquad \text{(b)} \quad u_t(x, 0) = g(x) \qquad (0 \leqq x \leqq L)$$

where $u_t = \partial u/\partial t$. We now have to find a solution of the PDE (1) satisfying the conditions (2) and (3). This will be the solution of our problem. We shall do this in three steps, as follows.

Step 1. By the "**method of separating variables**" or *product method,* setting $u(x, t) = F(x)G(t)$, we obtain from (1) two ODEs, one for $F(x)$ and the other one for $G(t)$.

Step 2. We determine solutions of these ODEs that satisfy the boundary conditions (2).

Step 3. Finally, using **Fourier series**, we compose the solutions found in Step 2 to obtain a solution of (1) satisfying both (2) and (3), that is, the solution of our model of the vibrating string.

Step 1. Two ODEs from the Wave Equation (1)

In the **method of separating variables**, or *product method*, we determine solutions of the wave equation (1) of the form

$$\text{(4)} \qquad u(x, t) = F(x)G(t)$$

which are a product of two functions, each depending on only one of the variables x and t. This is a powerful general method that has various applications in engineering mathematics, as we shall see in this chapter. Differentiating (4), we obtain

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = F\ddot{G} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = F''G$$

where dots denote derivatives with respect to t and primes derivatives with respect to x. By inserting this into the wave equation (1) we have

$$F\ddot{G} = c^2 F'' G.$$

Dividing by $c^2 FG$ and simplifying gives

$$\frac{\ddot{G}}{c^2 G} = \frac{F''}{F}.$$

The variables are now separated, the left side depending only on t and the right side only on x. Hence both sides must be constant because, if they were variable, then changing t or x would affect only one side, leaving the other unaltered. Thus, say,

$$\frac{\ddot{G}}{c^2 G} = \frac{F''}{F} = k.$$

Multiplying by the denominators gives immediately two ***ordinary*** DEs

(5) $$F'' - kF = 0$$

and

(6) $$\ddot{G} - c^2 kG = 0.$$

Here, the **separation constant** k is still arbitrary.

Step 2. Satisfying the Boundary Conditions (2)

We now determine solutions F and G of (5) and (6) so that $u = FG$ satisfies the boundary conditions (2), that is,

(7) $$u(0, t) = F(0)G(t) = 0, \qquad u(L, t) = F(L)G(t) = 0 \qquad \text{for all } t.$$

We first solve (5). If $G \equiv 0$, then $u = FG \equiv 0$, which is of no interest. Hence $G \not\equiv 0$ and then by (7),

(8) $$\text{(a)} \quad F(0) = 0, \qquad \text{(b)} \quad F(L) = 0.$$

We show that k must be negative. For $k = 0$ the general solution of (5) is $F = ax + b$, and from (8) we obtain $a = b = 0$, so that $F \equiv 0$ and $u = FG \equiv 0$, which is of no interest. For positive $k = \mu^2$ a general solution of (5) is

$$F = Ae^{\mu x} + Be^{-\mu x}$$

and from (8) we obtain $F \equiv 0$ as before (verify!). Hence we are left with the possibility of choosing k negative, say, $k = -p^2$. Then (5) becomes $F'' + p^2F = 0$ and has as a general solution

$$F(x) = A \cos px + B \sin px.$$

From this and (8) we have

$$F(0) = A = 0 \qquad \text{and then} \qquad F(L) = B \sin pL = 0.$$

We must take $B \neq 0$ since otherwise $F \equiv 0$. Hence $\sin pL = 0$. Thus

$$pL = n\pi, \qquad \text{so that} \qquad p = \frac{n\pi}{L} \qquad (n \text{ integer}). \tag{9}$$

Setting $B = 1$, we thus obtain infinitely many solutions $F(x) = F_n(x)$, where

$$F_n(x) = \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x \qquad (n = 1, 2, \cdots). \tag{10}$$

These solutions satisfy (8). [For negative integer n we obtain essentially the same solutions, except for a minus sign, because $\sin(-\alpha) = -\sin \alpha$.]

We now solve (6) with $k = -p^2 = -(n\pi/L)^2$ resulting from (9), that is,

$$\ddot{G} + \lambda_n^2 G = 0 \qquad \text{where} \qquad \lambda_n = cp = \frac{cn\pi}{L}. \tag{11*}$$

A general solution is

$$G_n(t) = B_n \cos \lambda_n t + B_n^* \sin \lambda_n t.$$

Hence solutions of (1) satisfying (2) are $u_n(x, t) = F_n(x)G_n(t) = G_n(t)F_n(x)$, written out

$$\boxed{u_n(x, t) = (B_n \cos \lambda_n t + B_n^* \sin \lambda_n t) \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x} \qquad (n = 1, 2, \cdots). \tag{11}$$

These functions are called the **eigenfunctions**, or *characteristic functions*, and the values $\lambda_n = cn\pi/L$ are called the **eigenvalues**, or *characteristic values*, of the vibrating string. The set $\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \cdots\}$ is called the **spectrum**.

Discussion of Eigenfunctions. We see that each u_n represents a harmonic motion having the **frequency** $\lambda_n/2\pi = cn/2L$ cycles per unit time. This motion is called the nth **normal mode** of the string. The first normal mode is known as the *fundamental mode* ($n = 1$), and the others are known as *overtones;* musically they give the octave, octave plus fifth, etc. Since in (11)

$$\sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} = 0 \qquad \text{at} \qquad x = \frac{L}{n}, \frac{2L}{n}, \cdots, \frac{n-1}{n} L,$$

the nth normal mode has $n - 1$ **nodes**, that is, points of the string that do not move (in addition to the fixed endpoints); see Fig. 287.

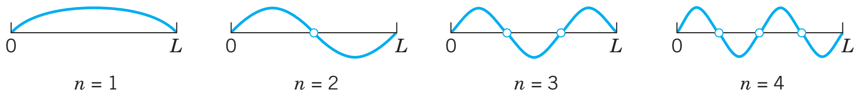


Fig. 287. Normal modes of the vibrating string

Figure 288 shows the second normal mode for various values of t. At any instant the string has the form of a sine wave. When the left part of the string is moving down, the other half is moving up, and conversely. For the other modes the situation is similar.

Tuning is done by changing the tension T. Our formula for the frequency $\lambda_n/2\pi = cn/2L$ of u_n with $c = \sqrt{T/\rho}$ [see (3), Sec. 12.2] confirms that effect because it shows that the frequency is proportional to the tension. T cannot be increased indefinitely, but can you see what to do to get a string with a high fundamental mode? (Think of both L and ρ.) Why is a violin smaller than a double-bass?

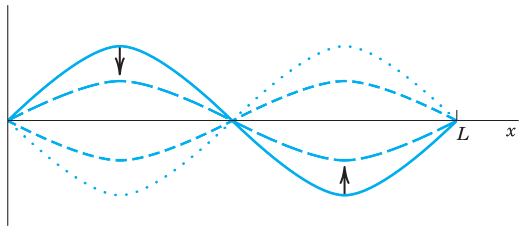


Fig. 288. Second normal mode for various values of t

Step 3. Solution of the Entire Problem. Fourier Series

The eigenfunctions (11) satisfy the wave equation (1) and the boundary conditions (2) (string fixed at the ends). A single u_n will generally not satisfy the initial conditions (3). But since the wave equation (1) is linear and homogeneous, it follows from Fundamental Theorem 1 in Sec. 12.1 that the sum of finitely many solutions u_n is a solution of (1). To obtain a solution that also satisfies the initial conditions (3), we consider the infinite series (with $\lambda_n = cn\pi/L$ as before)

$$u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} u_n(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (B_n \cos \lambda_n t + B_n^* \sin \lambda_n t) \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x. \tag{12}$$

Satisfying Initial Condition (3a) (Given Initial Displacement). From (12) and (3a) we obtain

$$u(x, 0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x = f(x). \qquad (0 \leqq x \leqq L). \tag{13}$$

Hence we must choose the B_n's so that $u(x, 0)$ becomes the **Fourier sine series** of $f(x)$. Thus, by (4) in Sec. 11.3,

$$B_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^L f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} \, dx, \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots. \tag{14}$$

Satisfying Initial Condition (3b) (Given Initial Velocity). Similarly, by differentiating (12) with respect to t and using (3b), we obtain

$$\left.\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right|_{t=0} = \left[\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-B_n\lambda_n \sin \lambda_n t + B_n^*\lambda_n \cos \lambda_n t) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}\right]_{t=0}$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n^*\lambda_n \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} = g(x).$$

Hence we must choose the B_n^*'s so that for $t = 0$ the derivative $\partial u/\partial t$ becomes the Fourier sine series of $g(x)$. Thus, again by (4) in Sec. 11.3,

$$B_n^*\lambda_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L g(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}\, dx.$$

Since $\lambda_n = cn\pi/L$, we obtain by division

(15)
$$B_n^* = \frac{2}{cn\pi}\int_0^L g(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}\, dx, \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots.$$

Result. Our discussion shows that $u(x, t)$ given by (12) with coefficients (14) and (15) is a solution of (1) that satisfies all the conditions in (2) and (3), provided the series (12) converges and so do the series obtained by differentiating (12) twice termwise with respect to x and t and have the sums $\partial^2 u/\partial x^2$ and $\partial^2 u/\partial t^2$, respectively, which are continuous.

Solution (12) Established. According to our derivation, the solution (12) is at first a purely formal expression, but we shall now establish it. For the sake of simplicity we consider only the case when the initial velocity $g(x)$ is identically zero. Then the B_n^* are zero, and (12) reduces to

$$u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \cos \lambda_n t \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}, \qquad \lambda_n = \frac{cn\pi}{L}. \tag{16}$$

It is possible to ***sum this series***, that is, to write the result in a closed or finite form. For this purpose we use the formula [see (11), App. A3.1]

$$\cos \frac{cn\pi}{L}t \sin \frac{n\pi}{L}x = \frac{1}{2}\left[\sin\left\{\frac{n\pi}{L}(x - ct)\right\} + \sin\left\{\frac{n\pi}{L}(x + ct)\right\}\right].$$

Consequently, we may write (16) in the form

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin\left\{\frac{n\pi}{L}(x - ct)\right\} + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin\left\{\frac{n\pi}{L}(x + ct)\right\}.$$

These two series are those obtained by substituting $x - ct$ and $x + ct$, respectively, for the variable x in the Fourier sine series (13) for $f(x)$. Thus

(17)
$$u(x, t) = \tfrac{1}{2}[f^*(x - ct) + f^*(x + ct)]$$

where f^* is the odd periodic extension of f with the period $2L$ (Fig. 289). Since the initial deflection $f(x)$ is continuous on the interval $0 \leqq x \leqq L$ and zero at the endpoints, it follows from (17) that $u(x, t)$ is a continuous function of both variables x and t for all values of the variables. By differentiating (17) we see that $u(x, t)$ is a solution of (1), provided $f(x)$ is twice differentiable on the interval $0 < x < L$, and has one-sided second derivatives at $x = 0$ and $x = L$, which are zero. Under these conditions $u(x, t)$ is established as a solution of (1), satisfying (2) and (3) with $g(x) \equiv 0$. ■

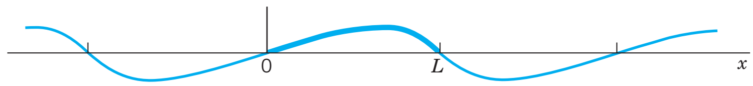


Fig. 289. Odd periodic extension of $f(x)$

Generalized Solution. If $f'(x)$ and $f''(x)$ are merely piecewise continuous (see Sec. 6.1), or if those one-sided derivatives are not zero, then for each t there will be finitely many values of x at which the second derivatives of u appearing in (1) do not exist. Except at these points the wave equation will still be satisfied. We may then regard $u(x, t)$ as a "**generalized solution**," as it is called, that is, as a solution in a broader sense. For instance, a triangular initial deflection as in Example 1 (below) leads to a generalized solution.

Physical Interpretation of the Solution (17). The graph of $f^*(x - ct)$ is obtained from the graph of $f^*(x)$ by shifting the latter ct units to the right (Fig. 290). This means that $f^*(x - ct)(c > 0)$ represents a wave that is traveling to the right as t increases. Similarly, $f^*(x + ct)$ represents a wave that is traveling to the left, and $u(x, t)$ is the superposition of these two waves.

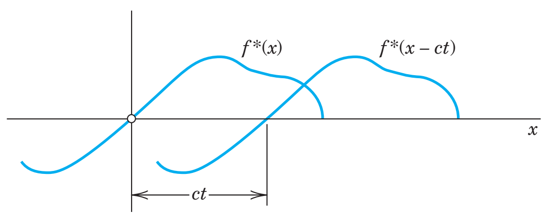


Fig. 290. Interpretation of (17)

EXAMPLE 1 **Vibrating String if the Initial Deflection Is Triangular**

Find the solution of the wave equation (1) satisfying (2) and corresponding to the triangular initial deflection

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{2k}{L}x & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < \dfrac{L}{2} \\[2ex] \dfrac{2k}{L}(L - x) & \text{if} \quad \dfrac{L}{2} < x < L \end{cases}$$

and initial velocity zero. (Figure 291 shows $f(x) = u(x, 0)$ at the top.)

Solution. Since $g(x) \equiv 0$, we have $B_n^* = 0$ in (12), and from Example 4 in Sec. 11.3 we see that the B_n are given by (5), Sec. 11.3. Thus (12) takes the form

$$u(x, t) = \frac{8k}{\pi^2}\left[\frac{1}{1^2}\sin\frac{\pi}{L}x\cos\frac{\pi c}{L}t - \frac{1}{3^2}\sin\frac{3\pi}{L}x\cos\frac{3\pi c}{L}t + - \cdots\right].$$

For graphing the solution we may use $u(x, 0) = f(x)$ and the above interpretation of the two functions in the representation (17). This leads to the graph shown in Fig. 291. ■

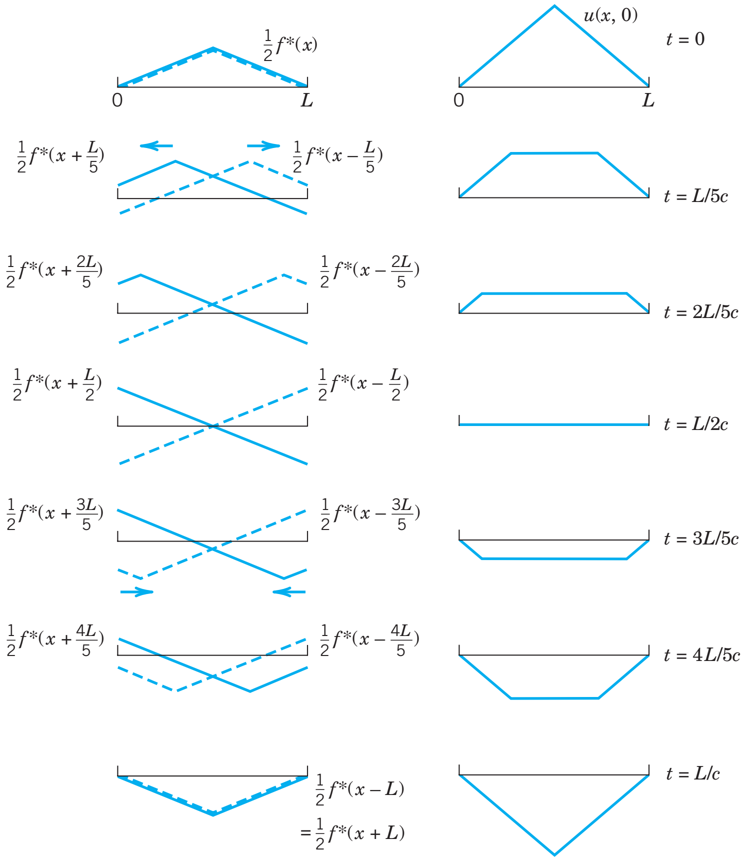


Fig. 291. Solution $u(x, t)$ in Example 1 for various values of t (right part of the figure) obtained as the superposition of a wave traveling to the right (dashed) and a wave traveling to the left (left part of the figure)

PROBLEM SET 12.3

1. **Frequency.** How does the frequency of the fundamental mode of the vibrating string depend on the length of the string? On the mass per unit length? What happens if we double the tension? Why is a contrabass larger than a violin?

2. **Physical Assumptions.** How would the motion of the string change if Assumption 3 were violated? Assumption 2? The second part of Assumption 1? The first part? Do we really need all these assumptions?

3. **String of length π.** Write down the derivation in this section for length $L = \pi$, to see the very substantial simplification of formulas in this case that may show ideas more clearly.

4. **CAS PROJECT. Graphing Normal Modes.** Write a program for graphing u_n with $L = \pi$ and c^2 of your choice similarly as in Fig. 287. Apply the program to u_2, u_3, u_4. Also graph these solutions as surfaces over the xt-plane. Explain the connection between these two kinds of graphs.

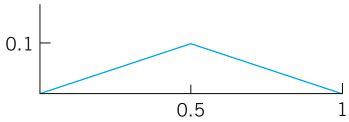
5–13 DEFLECTION OF THE STRING

Find $u(x, t)$ for the string of length $L = 1$ and $c^2 = 1$ when the initial velocity is zero and the initial deflection with small k (say, 0.01) is as follows. Sketch or graph $u(x, t)$ as in Fig. 291 in the text.

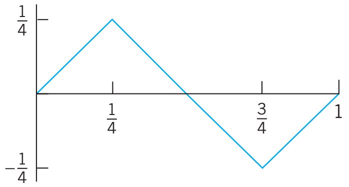
5. $k \sin 3\pi x$
6. $k (\sin \pi x - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2\pi x)$

7. $kx(1 - x)$ **8.** $kx^2(1 - x)$

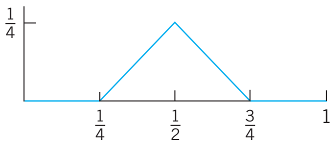
9.



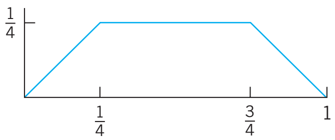
10.



11.



12.



13. $2x - 4x^2$ if $0 < x < \frac{1}{2}$, 0 if $\frac{1}{2} < x < 1$

14. Nonzero initial velocity. Find the deflection $u(x, t)$ of the string of length $L = \pi$ and $c^2 = 1$ for zero initial displacement and "triangular" initial velocity $u_t(x, 0) = 0.01x$ if $0 \leqq x \leqq \frac{1}{2}\pi$, $u_t(x, 0) = 0.01(\pi - x)$ if $\frac{1}{2}\pi \leqq x \leqq \pi$. (Initial conditions with $u_t(x, 0) \neq 0$ are hard to realize experimentally.)

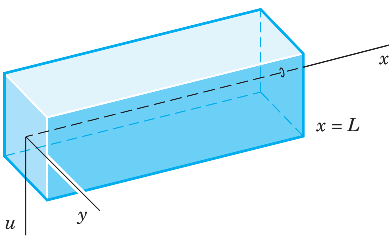


Fig. 292. Elastic beam

15–20 SEPARATION OF A FOURTH-ORDER PDE. VIBRATING BEAM

By the principles used in modeling the string it can be shown that small free vertical vibrations of a uniform elastic beam (Fig. 292) are modeled by the fourth-order PDE

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = -c^2 \frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial x^4} \qquad \text{(21)} \qquad \text{(Ref. [C11])}$$

where $c^2 = EI/\rho A$ (E = Young's modulus of elasticity, I = moment of intertia of the cross section with respect to the y-axis in the figure, ρ = density, A = cross-sectional area). (*Bending* of a beam under a load is discussed in Sec. 3.3.)

15. Substituting $u = F(x)G(t)$ into (21), show that

$$F^{(4)}/F = -\ddot{G}/c^2 G = \beta^4 = \text{const},$$
$$F(x) = A\cos\beta x + B\sin\beta x + C\cosh\beta x + D\sinh\beta x,$$
$$G(t) = a\cos c\beta^2 t + b\sin c\beta^2 t.$$

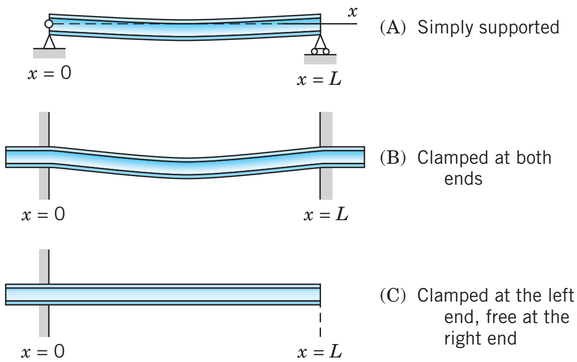


Fig. 293. Supports of a beam

16. Simply supported beam in Fig. 293A. Find solutions $u_n = F_n(x)G_n(t)$ of (21) corresponding to zero initial velocity and satisfying the boundary conditions (see Fig. 293A)

$$u(0, t) = 0, \; u(L, t) = 0$$
(ends simply supported for all times t),
$$u_{xx}(0, t) = 0, \; u_{xx}(L, t) = 0$$
(zero moments, hence zero curvature, at the ends).

17. Find the solution of (21) that satisfies the conditions in Prob. 16 as well as the initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = f(x) = x(L - x).$$

18. Compare the results of Probs. 17 and 7. What is the basic difference between the frequencies of the normal modes of the vibrating string and the vibrating beam?

19. Clamped beam in Fig. 293B. What are the boundary conditions for the clamped beam in Fig. 293B? Show that F in Prob. 15 satisfies these conditions if βL is a solution of the equation

$$\cosh\beta L \cos\beta L = 1. \qquad (22)$$

Determine approximate solutions of (22), for instance, graphically from the intersections of the curves of $\cos\beta L$ and $1/\cosh\beta L$.

20. Clamped-free beam in Fig. 293C. If the beam is clamped at the left and free at the right (Fig. 293C), the boundary conditions are

$$u(0, t) = 0, \qquad u_x(0, t) = 0,$$
$$u_{xx}(L, t) = 0, \qquad u_{xxx}(L, t) = 0.$$

Show that F in Prob. 15 satisfies these conditions if βL is a solution of the equation

$$\cosh \beta L \cos \beta L = -1. \tag{23}$$

Find approximate solutions of (23).

12.4 D'Alembert's Solution of the Wave Equation. Characteristics

It is interesting that the solution (17), Sec. 12.3, of the wave equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}, \qquad c^2 = \frac{T}{\rho}, \tag{1}$$

can be immediately obtained by transforming (1) in a suitable way, namely, by introducing the new independent variables

$$v = x + ct, \qquad w = x - ct. \tag{2}$$

Then u becomes a function of v and w. The derivatives in (1) can now be expressed in terms of derivatives with respect to v and w by the use of the chain rule in Sec. 9.6. Denoting partial derivatives by subscripts, we see from (2) that $v_x = 1$ and $w_x = 1$. For simplicity let us denote $u(x, t)$, as a function of v and w, by the same letter u. Then

$$u_x = u_v v_x + u_w w_x = u_v + u_w.$$

We now apply the chain rule to the right side of this equation. We assume that all the partial derivatives involved are continuous, so that $u_{wv} = u_{vw}$. Since $v_x = 1$ and $w_x = 1$, we obtain

$$u_{xx} = (u_v + u_w)_x = (u_v + u_w)_v v_x + (u_v + u_w)_w w_x = u_{vv} + 2u_{vw} + u_{ww}.$$

Transforming the other derivative in (1) by the same procedure, we find

$$u_{tt} = c^2(u_{vv} - 2u_{vw} + u_{ww}).$$

By inserting these two results in (1) we get (see footnote 2 in App. A3.2)

$$\boxed{u_{vw} \equiv \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial w \, \partial v} = 0.} \tag{3}$$

The point of the present method is that (3) can be readily solved by two successive integrations, first with respect to w and then with respect to v. This gives

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial v} = h(v) \qquad \text{and} \qquad u = \int h(v)\, dv + \psi(w).$$

Here $h(v)$ and $\psi(w)$ are arbitrary functions of v and w, respectively. Since the integral is a function of v, say, $\phi(v)$, the solution is of the form $u = \phi(v) + \psi(w)$. In terms of x and t, by (2), we thus have

$$u(x,t) = \phi(x+ct) + \psi(x-ct). \tag{4}$$

This is known as **d'Alembert's solution**[1] of the wave equation (1).

Its derivation was much more elegant than the method in Sec. 12.3, but d'Alembert's method is special, whereas the use of Fourier series applies to various equations, as we shall see.

D'Alembert's Solution Satisfying the Initial Conditions

$$\text{(a)}\quad u(x,0) = f(x), \qquad \text{(b)}\quad u_t(x,0) = g(x). \tag{5}$$

These are the same as (3) in Sec. 12.3. By differentiating (4) we have

$$u_t(x,t) = c\phi'(x+ct) - c\psi'(x-ct) \tag{6}$$

where primes denote derivatives with respect to the *entire* arguments $x + ct$ and $x - ct$, respectively, and the minus sign comes from the chain rule. From (4)–(6) we have

$$u(x,0) = \phi(x) + \psi(x) = f(x), \tag{7}$$

$$u_t(x,0) = c\phi'(x) + c\psi'(x) = g(x). \tag{8}$$

Dividing (8) by c and integrating with respect to x, we obtain

$$\phi(x) - \psi(x) = k(x_0) + \frac{1}{c}\int_{x_0}^{x} g(s)\,ds, \qquad k(x_0) = \phi(x_0) - \psi(x_0). \tag{9}$$

If we add this to (7), then ψ drops out and division by 2 gives

$$\phi(x) = \frac{1}{2}f(x) + \frac{1}{2c}\int_{x_0}^{x} g(s)\,ds + \frac{1}{2}k(x_0). \tag{10}$$

Similarly, subtraction of (9) from (7) and division by 2 gives

$$\psi(x) = \frac{1}{2}f(x) - \frac{1}{2c}\int_{x_0}^{x} g(s)\,ds - \frac{1}{2}k(x_0). \tag{11}$$

In (10) we replace x by $x + ct$; we then get an integral from x_0 to $x + ct$. In (11) we replace x by $x - ct$ and get minus an integral from x_0 to $x - ct$ or plus an integral from $x - ct$ to x_0. Hence addition of $\phi(x + ct)$ and $\psi(x - ct)$ gives $u(x, t)$ [see (4)] in the form

$$u(x,t) = \frac{1}{2}[f(x+ct) + f(x-ct)] + \frac{1}{2c}\int_{x-ct}^{x+ct} g(s)\,ds. \tag{12}$$

---

[1]JEAN LE ROND D'ALEMBERT (1717–1783), French mathematician, also known for his important work in mechanics.

We mention that the general theory of PDEs provides a systematic way for finding the transformation (2) that simplifies (1). See Ref. [C8] in App. 1.

If the initial velocity is zero, we see that this reduces to

$$u(x, t) = \tfrac{1}{2}[f(x + ct) + f(x - ct)], \tag{13}$$

in agreement with (17) in Sec. 12.3. You may show that because of the boundary conditions (2) in that section the function f must be odd and must have the period $2L$.

Our result shows that the two initial conditions [the functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ in (5)] determine the solution uniquely.

The solution of the wave equation by the Laplace transform method will be shown in Sec. 12.11.

Characteristics. Types and Normal Forms of PDEs

The idea of d'Alembert's solution is just a special instance of the **method of characteristics**. This concerns PDEs of the form

$$Au_{xx} + 2Bu_{xy} + Cu_{yy} = F(x, y, u, u_x, u_y) \tag{14}$$

(as well as PDEs in more than two variables). Equation (14) is called **quasilinear** because it is linear in the highest derivatives (but may be arbitrary otherwise). There are three types of PDEs (14), depending on the discriminant $AC - B^2$, as follows.

Type	Defining Condition	Example in Sec. 12.1
Hyperbolic	$AC - B^2 < 0$	Wave equation (1)
Parabolic	$AC - B^2 = 0$	Heat equation (2)
Elliptic	$AC - B^2 > 0$	Laplace equation (3)

Note that (1) and (2) in Sec. 12.1 involve t, but to have y as in (14), we set $y = ct$ in (1), obtaining $u_{tt} - c^2u_{xx} = c^2(u_{yy} - u_{xx}) = 0$. And in (2) we set $y = c^2t$, so that $u_t - c^2u_{xx} = c^2(u_y - u_{xx})$.

A, B, C may be functions of x, y, so that a PDE may be **of mixed type**, that is, of different type in different regions of the xy-plane. An important mixed-type PDE is the **Tricomi equation** (see Prob. 10).

Transformation of (14) to Normal Form. The normal forms of (14) and the corresponding transformations depend on the type of the PDE. They are obtained by solving the **characteristic equation** of (14), which is the ODE

$$Ay'^2 - 2By' + C = 0 \tag{15}$$

where $y' = dy/dx$ (note $-2B$, not $+2B$). The solutions of (15) are called the **characteristics** of (14), and we write them in the form $\Phi(x, y) = \text{const}$ and $\Psi(x, y) = \text{const}$. Then the transformations giving new variables v, w instead of x, y and the normal forms of (14) are as follows.

Type	New Variables		Normal Form
Hyperbolic	$v = \Phi$	$w = \Psi$	$u_{vw} = F_1$
Parabolic	$v = x$	$w = \Phi = \Psi$	$u_{ww} = F_2$
Elliptic	$v = \frac{1}{2}(\Phi + \Psi)$	$w = \frac{1}{2i}(\Phi - \Psi)$	$u_{vv} + u_{ww} = F_3$

Here, $\Phi = \Phi(x, y), \Psi = \Psi(x, y), F_1 = F_1(v, w, u, u_v, u_w)$, etc., and we denote u as function of v, w again by u, for simplicity. We see that the normal form of a hyperbolic PDE is as in d'Alembert's solution. In the parabolic case we get just one family of solutions $\Phi = \Psi$. In the elliptic case, $i = \sqrt{-1}$, and the characteristics are complex and are of minor interest. For derivation, see Ref. [GenRef3] in App. 1.

EXAMPLE 1 **D'Alembert's Solution Obtained Systematically**

The theory of characteristics gives d'Alembert's solution in a systematic fashion. To see this, we write the wave equation $u_{tt} - c^2 u_{xx} = 0$ in the form (14) by setting $y = ct$. By the chain rule, $u_t = u_y y_t = c u_y$ and $u_{tt} = c^2 u_{yy}$. Division by c^2 gives $u_{xx} - u_{yy} = 0$, as stated before. Hence the characteristic equation is $y'^2 - 1 = (y' + 1)(y' - 1) = 0$. The two families of solutions (characteristics) are $\Phi(x, y) = y + x = \text{const}$ and $\Psi(x, y) = y - x = \text{const}$. This gives the new variables $v = \Phi = y + x = ct + x$ and $w = \Psi = y - x = ct - x$ and d'Alembert's solution $u = f_1(x + ct) + f_2(x - ct)$. ■

PROBLEM SET 12.4

1. Show that c is the speed of each of the two waves given by (4).
2. Show that, because of the boundary conditions (2), Sec. 12.3, the function f in (13) of this section must be odd and of period $2L$.
3. If a steel wire 2 m in length weighs 0.9 nt (about 0.20 lb) and is stretched by a tensile force of 300 nt (about 67.4 lb), what is the corresponding speed of transverse waves?
4. What are the frequencies of the eigenfunctions in Prob. 3?

5–8 GRAPHING SOLUTIONS

Using (13) sketch or graph a figure (similar to Fig. 291 in Sec. 12.3) of the deflection $u(x, t)$ of a vibrating string (length $L = 1$, ends fixed, $c = 1$) starting with initial velocity 0 and initial deflection (k small, say, $k = 0.01$).

5. $f(x) = k \sin \pi x$
6. $f(x) = k(1 - \cos \pi x)$
7. $f(x) = k \sin 2\pi x$
8. $f(x) = kx(1 - x)$

9–18 NORMAL FORMS

Find the type, transform to normal form, and solve. Show your work in detail.

9. $u_{xx} + 4u_{yy} = 0$
10. $u_{xx} - 16u_{yy} = 0$
11. $u_{xx} + 2u_{xy} + u_{yy} = 0$
12. $u_{xx} - 2u_{xy} + u_{yy} = 0$
13. $u_{xx} + 5u_{xy} + 4u_{yy} = 0$
14. $xu_{xy} - yu_{yy} = 0$
15. $xu_{xx} - yu_{xy} = 0$
16. $u_{xx} + 2u_{xy} + 10u_{yy} = 0$
17. $u_{xx} - 4u_{xy} + 5u_{yy} = 0$
18. $u_{xx} - 6u_{xy} + 9u_{yy} = 0$
19. **Longitudinal Vibrations of an Elastic Bar or Rod.** These vibrations in the direction of the x-axis are modeled by the wave equation $u_{tt} = c^2 u_{xx}$, $c^2 = E/\rho$ (see Tolstov [C9], p. 275). If the rod is fastened at one end, $x = 0$, and free at the other, $x = L$, we have $u(0, t) = 0$ and $u_x(L, t) = 0$. Show that the motion corresponding to initial displacement $u(x, 0) = f(x)$ and initial velocity zero is

$$u = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_n \sin p_n x \cos p_n ct,$$

$$A_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x) \sin p_n x \, dx, \qquad p_n = \frac{(2n + 1)\pi}{2L}.$$

20. **Tricomi and Airy equations.**[2] Show that the *Tricomi equation* $yu_{xx} + u_{yy} = 0$ is of mixed type. Obtain the **Airy equation** $G'' - yG = 0$ from the Tricomi equation by separation. (For solutions, see p. 446 of Ref. [GenRef1] listed in App. 1.)

[2]Sir GEORGE BIDELL AIRY (1801–1892), English mathematician, known for his work in elasticity. FRANCESCO TRICOMI (1897–1978), Italian mathematician, who worked in integral equations and functional analysis.

12.5 Modeling: Heat Flow from a Body in Space. Heat Equation

After the wave equation (Sec. 12.2) we now derive and discuss the next "big" PDE, the **heat equation**, which governs the temperature u in a body in space. We obtain this model of temperature distribution under the following.

Physical Assumptions

1. The *specific heat* σ and the *density* ρ of the material of the body are constant. No heat is produced or disappears in the body.
2. Experiments show that, in a body, heat flows in the direction of decreasing temperature, and the rate of flow is proportional to the gradient (cf. Sec. 9.7) of the temperature; that is, the velocity $\mathbf{v}$ of the heat flow in the body is of the form

$$\mathbf{v} = -K \operatorname{grad} u \tag{1}$$

   where $u(x, y, z, t)$ is the temperature at a point (x, y, z) and time t.
3. The *thermal conductivity* K is constant, as is the case for homogeneous material and nonextreme temperatures.

Under these assumptions we can model heat flow as follows.

Let T be a region in the body bounded by a surface S with outer unit normal vector $\mathbf{n}$ such that the divergence theorem (Sec. 10.7) applies. Then

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n}$$

is the component of $\mathbf{v}$ in the direction of $\mathbf{n}$. Hence $|\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n}\, \Delta A|$ is the amount of heat *leaving* T (if $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n} > 0$ at some point P) or *entering* T (if $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n} < 0$ at P) per unit time at some point P of S through a small portion ΔS of S of area ΔA. Hence the total amount of heat that flows across S from T is given by the surface integral

$$\iint_S \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n}\, dA.$$

Note that, so far, this parallels the derivation on fluid flow in Example 1 of Sec. 10.8.

Using Gauss's theorem (Sec. 10.7), we now convert our surface integral into a volume integral over the region T. Because of (1) this gives [use (3) in Sec. 9.8]

$$\begin{aligned}\iint_S \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n}\, dA &= -K \iint_S (\operatorname{grad} u) \cdot \mathbf{n}\, dA = -K \iiint_T \operatorname{div}(\operatorname{grad} u)\, dx\, dy\, dz \\ &= -K \iiint_T \nabla^2 u\, dx\, dy\, dz.\end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

Here,

$$\nabla^2 u = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2}$$

is the **Laplacian** of u.

On the other hand, the total amount of heat in T is

$$H = \iiint_T \sigma\rho u \, dx\, dy\, dz$$

with σ and ρ as before. Hence the time rate of decrease of H is

$$-\frac{\partial H}{\partial t} = -\iiint_T \sigma\rho \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \, dx\, dy\, dz.$$

This must be equal to the amount of heat leaving T because no heat is produced or disappears in the body. From (2) we thus obtain

$$-\iiint_T \sigma\rho \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \, dx\, dy\, dz = -K \iiint_T \nabla^2 u \, dx\, dy\, dz$$

or (divide by $-\sigma\rho$)

$$\iiint_T \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} - c^2 \nabla^2 u\right) dx\, dy\, dz = 0 \qquad c^2 = \frac{K}{\sigma\rho}.$$

Since this holds for any region T in the body, the integrand (if continuous) must be zero everywhere. That is,

$$\text{(3)} \qquad \boxed{\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = c^2 \nabla^2 u.} \qquad c^2 = K/\rho\sigma$$

This is the **heat equation**, the fundamental PDE modeling heat flow. It gives the temperature $u(x, y, z, t)$ in a body of homogeneous material in space. The constant c^2 is the *thermal diffusivity*. K is the *thermal conductivity*, σ the *specific heat*, and ρ the *density* of the material of the body. $\nabla^2 u$ is the Laplacian of u and, with respect to the Cartesian coordinates x, y, z, is

$$\nabla^2 u = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2}.$$

The heat equation is also called the **diffusion equation** because it also models chemical diffusion processes of one substance or gas into another.

12.6 Heat Equation: Solution by Fourier Series. Steady Two-Dimensional Heat Problems. Dirichlet Problem

We want to solve the (one-dimensional) heat equation just developed in Sec. 12.5 and give several applications. This is followed much later in this section by an extension of the heat equation to two dimensions.

Fig. 294. Bar under consideration

As an important application of the heat equation, let us first consider the temperature in a long thin metal bar or wire of constant cross section and homogeneous material, which is oriented along the x-axis (Fig. 294) and is perfectly insulated laterally, so that heat flows in the x-direction only. Then besides time, u depends only on x, so that the Laplacian reduces to $u_{xx} = \partial^2 u/\partial x^2$, and the heat equation becomes the **one-dimensional heat equation**

$$\text{(1)} \qquad \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}.$$

This PDE seems to differ only very little from the wave equation, which has a term u_{tt} instead of u_t, but we shall see that this will make the solutions of (1) behave quite differently from those of the wave equation.

We shall solve (1) for some important types of boundary and initial conditions. We begin with the case in which the ends $x = 0$ and $x = L$ of the bar are kept at temperature zero, so that we have the **boundary conditions**

$$\text{(2)} \qquad u(0, t) = 0, \qquad u(L, t) = 0 \qquad \text{for all } t \geqq 0.$$

Furthermore, the initial temperature in the bar at time $t = 0$ is given, say, $f(x)$, so that we have the **initial condition**

$$\text{(3)} \qquad u(x, 0) = f(x) \qquad [f(x) \text{ given}].$$

Here we must have $f(0) = 0$ and $f(L) = 0$ because of (2).

We shall determine a solution $u(x, t)$ of (1) satisfying (2) and (3)—one initial condition will be enough, as opposed to two initial conditions for the wave equation. Technically, our method will parallel that for the wave equation in Sec. 12.3: a separation of variables, followed by the use of Fourier series. You may find a step-by-step comparison worthwhile.

***Step 1.* Two ODEs from the heat equation (1).** Substitution of a product $u(x, t) = F(x)G(t)$ into (1) gives $F\dot{G} = c^2 F''G$ with $\dot{G} = dG/dt$ and $F'' = d^2F/dx^2$. To separate the variables, we divide by $c^2 FG$, obtaining

$$\text{(4)} \qquad \frac{\dot{G}}{c^2 G} = \frac{F''}{F}.$$

The left side depends only on t and the right side only on x, so that both sides must equal a constant k (as in Sec. 12.3). You may show that for $k = 0$ or $k > 0$ the only solution $u = FG$ satisfying (2) is $u \equiv 0$. For negative $k = -p^2$ we have from (4)

$$\frac{\dot{G}}{c^2 G} = \frac{F''}{F} = -p^2.$$

Multiplication by the denominators immediately gives the two ODEs

$$F'' + p^2F = 0 \tag{5}$$

and

$$\dot{G} + c^2p^2G = 0. \tag{6}$$

***Step 2.* Satisfying the boundary conditions (2).** We first solve (5). A general solution is

$$F(x) = A\cos px + B\sin px. \tag{7}$$

From the boundary conditions (2) it follows that

$$u(0, t) = F(0)G(t) = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad u(L, t) = F(L)G(t) = 0.$$

Since $G \equiv 0$ would give $u \equiv 0$, we require $F(0) = 0$, $F(L) = 0$ and get $F(0) = A = 0$ by (7) and then $F(L) = B\sin pL = 0$, with $B \neq 0$ (to avoid $F \equiv 0$); thus,

$$\sin pL = 0, \qquad \text{hence} \qquad p = \frac{n\pi}{L}, \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots.$$

Setting $B = 1$, we thus obtain the following solutions of (5) satisfying (2):

$$F_n(x) = \sin\frac{n\pi x}{L}, \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots.$$

(As in Sec. 12.3, we need not consider *negative* integer values of n.)

All this was literally the same as in Sec. 12.3. From now on it differs since (6) differs from (6) in Sec. 12.3. We now solve (6). For $p = n\pi/L$, as just obtained, (6) becomes

$$\dot{G} + \lambda_n^2 G = 0 \qquad \text{where} \qquad \lambda_n = \frac{cn\pi}{L}.$$

It has the general solution

$$G_n(t) = B_n e^{-\lambda_n^2 t}, \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots$$

where B_n is a constant. Hence the functions

$$u_n(x, t) = F_n(x)G_n(t) = B_n \sin\frac{n\pi x}{L}\, e^{-\lambda_n^2 t} \qquad (n = 1, 2, \cdots) \tag{8}$$

are solutions of the heat equation (1), satisfying (2). These are the **eigenfunctions** of the problem, corresponding to the **eigenvalues** $\lambda_n = cn\pi/L$.

***Step 3.* Solution of the entire problem. Fourier series.** So far we have solutions (8) satisfying the boundary conditions (2). To obtain a solution that also satisfies the initial condition (3), we consider a series of these eigenfunctions,

$$u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} u_n(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin\frac{n\pi x}{L}\, e^{-\lambda_n^2 t} \qquad \left(\lambda_n = \frac{cn\pi}{L}\right). \tag{9}$$

From this and (3) we have

$$u(x, 0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} = f(x).$$

Hence for (9) to satisfy (3), the B_n's must be the coefficients of the **Fourier sine series**, as given by (4) in Sec. 11.3; thus

$$\textbf{(10)} \qquad \boxed{B_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}\, dx} \qquad (n = 1, 2, \cdots).$$

The solution of our problem can be established, assuming that $f(x)$ is piecewise continuous (see Sec. 6.1) on the interval $0 \leqq x \leqq L$ and has one-sided derivatives (see Sec. 11.1) at all interior points of that interval; that is, under these assumptions the series (9) with coefficients (10) is the solution of our physical problem. A proof requires knowledge of uniform convergence and will be given at a later occasion (Probs. 19, 20 in Problem Set 15.5).

Because of the exponential factor, all the terms in (9) approach zero as t approaches infinity. The rate of decay increases with n.

EXAMPLE 1 Sinusoidal Initial Temperature

Find the temperature $u(x, t)$ in a laterally insulated copper bar 80 cm long if the initial temperature is $100 \sin(\pi x/80)$ °C and the ends are kept at 0°C. How long will it take for the maximum temperature in the bar to drop to 50°C? First guess, then calculate. *Physical data for copper:* density $8.92\ \text{g/cm}^3$, specific heat 0.092 cal/(g °C), thermal conductivity 0.95 cal/(cm sec °C).

Solution. The initial condition gives

$$u(x, 0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin \frac{n\pi x}{80} = f(x) = 100 \sin \frac{\pi x}{80}.$$

Hence, by inspection or from (9), we get $B_1 = 100$, $B_2 = B_3 = \cdots = 0$. In (9) we need $\lambda_1^2 = c^2\pi^2/L^2$, where $c^2 = K/(\sigma\rho) = 0.95/(0.092 \cdot 8.92) = 1.158\ [\text{cm}^2/\text{sec}]$. Hence we obtain

$$\lambda_1^2 = 1.158 \cdot 9.870/80^2 = 0.001785\ [\text{sec}^{-1}].$$

The solution (9) is

$$u(x, t) = 100 \sin \frac{\pi x}{80}\, e^{-0.001785t}.$$

Also, $100e^{-0.001785t} = 50$ when $t = (\ln 0.5)/(-0.001785) = 388$ [sec] ≈ 6.5 [min]. Does your guess, or at least its order of magnitude, agree with this result? ■

EXAMPLE 2 Speed of Decay

Solve the problem in Example 1 when the initial temperature is $100 \sin(3\pi x/80)$ °C and the other data are as before.

Solution. In (9), instead of $n = 1$ we now have $n = 3$, and $\lambda_3^2 = 3^2\lambda_1^2 = 9 \cdot 0.001785 = 0.01607$, so that the solution now is

$$u(x, t) = 100 \sin \frac{3\pi x}{80} e^{-0.01607t}.$$

Hence the maximum temperature drops to 50°C in $t = (\ln 0.5)/(-0.01607) \approx 43$ [sec], which is much faster (9 times as fast as in Example 1; why?).

Had we chosen a bigger n, the decay would have been still faster, and in a sum or series of such terms, each term has its own rate of decay, and terms with large n are practically 0 after a very short time. Our next example is of this type, and the curve in Fig. 295 corresponding to $t = 0.5$ looks almost like a sine curve; that is, it is practically the graph of the first term of the solution. ■

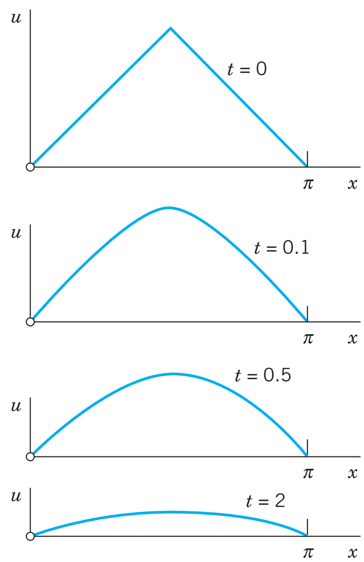


Fig. 295. Example 3. Decrease of temperature with time t for $L = \pi$ and $c = 1$

EXAMPLE 3 "Triangular" Initial Temperature in a Bar

Find the temperature in a laterally insulated bar of length L whose ends are kept at temperature 0, assuming that the initial temperature is

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if} \quad 0 < x < L/2, \\ L - x & \text{if} \quad L/2 < x < L. \end{cases}$$

(The uppermost part of Fig. 295 shows this function for the special $L = \pi$.)

Solution. From (10) we get

$$B_n = \frac{2}{L}\left(\int_0^{L/2} x \sin\frac{n\pi x}{L}\,dx + \int_{L/2}^{L} (L - x)\sin\frac{n\pi x}{L}\,dx\right). \tag{10*}$$

Integration gives $B_n = 0$ if n is even,

$$B_n = \frac{4L}{n^2\pi^2} \quad (n = 1, 5, 9, \cdots) \qquad \text{and} \qquad B_n = -\frac{4L}{n^2\pi^2} \quad (n = 3, 7, 11, \cdots).$$

(see also Example 4 in Sec. 11.3 with $k = L/2$). Hence the solution is

$$u(x, t) = \frac{4L}{\pi^2}\left[\sin\frac{\pi x}{L}\exp\left[-\left(\frac{c\pi}{L}\right)^2 t\right] - \frac{1}{9}\sin\frac{3\pi x}{L}\exp\left[-\left(\frac{3c\pi}{L}\right)^2 t\right] + - \cdots\right].$$

Figure 295 shows that the temperature decreases with increasing t, because of the heat loss due to the cooling of the ends.

Compare Fig. 295 and Fig. 291 in Sec. 12.3 and comment. ■

EXAMPLE 4 Bar with Insulated Ends. Eigenvalue 0

Find a solution formula of (1), (3) with (2) replaced by the condition that both ends of the bar are insulated.

Solution. Physical experiments show that the rate of heat flow is proportional to the gradient of the temperature. Hence if the ends $x = 0$ and $x = L$ of the bar are insulated, so that no heat can flow through the ends, we have grad $u = u_x = \partial u/\partial x$ and the boundary conditions

$$u_x(0, t) = 0, \qquad u_x(L, t) = 0 \qquad \text{for all } t. \tag{2*}$$

Since $u(x, t) = F(x)G(t)$, this gives $u_x(0, t) = F'(0)G(t) = 0$ and $u_x(L, t) = F'(L)G(t) = 0$. Differentiating (7), we have $F'(x) = -Ap \sin px + Bp \cos px$, so that

$$F'(0) = Bp = 0 \qquad \text{and then} \qquad F'(L) = -Ap \sin pL = 0.$$

The second of these conditions gives $p = p_n = n\pi/L$, $(n = 0, 1, 2, \cdots)$. From this and (7) with $A = 1$ and $B = 0$ we get $F_n(x) = \cos(n\pi x/L)$, $(n = 0, 1, 2, \cdots)$. With G_n as before, this yields the eigenfunctions

$$u_n(x, t) = F_n(x)G_n(t) = A_n \cos\frac{n\pi x}{L} e^{-\lambda_n^2 t} \qquad (n = 0, 1, \cdots) \tag{11}$$

corresponding to the eigenvalues $\lambda_n = cn\pi/L$. The latter are as before, but we now have the additional eigenvalue $\lambda_0 = 0$ and eigenfunction $u_0 =$ const, which is the solution of the problem if the initial temperature $f(x)$ is constant. This shows the remarkable fact that ***a separation constant can very well be zero, and zero can be an eigenvalue.***

Furthermore, whereas (8) gave a Fourier sine series, we now get from (11) a Fourier cosine series

$$u(x, t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} u_n(x, t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_n \cos\frac{n\pi x}{L} e^{-\lambda_n^2 t} \qquad \left(\lambda_n = \frac{cn\pi}{L}\right). \tag{12}$$

Its coefficients result from the initial condition (3),

$$u(x, 0) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_n \cos\frac{n\pi x}{L} = f(x),$$

in the form (2), Sec. 11.3, that is,

$$A_0 = \frac{1}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\,dx, \qquad A_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\cos\frac{n\pi x}{L}\,dx, \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots. \tag{13}$$

■

EXAMPLE 5 "Triangular" Initial Temperature in a Bar with Insulated Ends

Find the temperature in the bar in Example 3, assuming that the ends are insulated (instead of being kept at temperature 0).

Solution. For the triangular initial temperature, (13) gives $A_0 = L/4$ and (see also Example 4 in Sec. 11.3 with $k = L/2$)

$$A_n = \frac{2}{L}\left[\int_0^{L/2} x\cos\frac{n\pi x}{L}\,dx + \int_{L/2}^{L}(L - x)\cos\frac{n\pi x}{L}\,dx\right] = \frac{2L}{n^2\pi^2}\left(2\cos\frac{n\pi}{2} - \cos n\pi - 1\right).$$

Hence the solution (12) is

$$u(x, t) = \frac{L}{4} - \frac{8L}{\pi^2}\left\{\frac{1}{2^2}\cos\frac{2\pi x}{L}\exp\left[-\left(\frac{2c\pi}{L}\right)^2 t\right] + \frac{1}{6^2}\cos\frac{6\pi x}{L}\exp\left[-\left(\frac{6c\pi}{L}\right)^2 t\right] + \cdots\right\}.$$

We see that the terms decrease with increasing t, and $u \to L/4$ as $t \to \infty$; this is the mean value of the initial temperature. This is plausible because no heat can escape from this totally insulated bar. In contrast, the cooling of the ends in Example 3 led to heat loss and $u \to 0$, the temperature at which the ends were kept. ■

Steady Two-Dimensional Heat Problems. Laplace's Equation

We shall now extend our discussion from one to two space dimensions and consider the two-dimensional heat equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = c^2 \nabla^2 u = c^2 \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} \right)$$

for **steady** (that is, *time-independent*) problems. Then $\partial u/\partial t = 0$ and the heat equation reduces to **Laplace's equation**

$$\nabla^2 u = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = 0 \tag{14}$$

(which has already occurred in Sec. 10.8 and will be considered further in Secs. 12.8–12.11). A heat problem then consists of this PDE to be considered in some region R of the xy-plane and a given boundary condition on the boundary curve C of R. This is a **boundary value problem (BVP)**. One calls it:

First BVP or **Dirichlet Problem** if u is prescribed on C ("**Dirichlet boundary condition**")

Second BVP or **Neumann Problem** if the normal derivative $u_n = \partial u/\partial n$ is prescribed on C ("**Neumann boundary condition**")

Third BVP, **Mixed BVP**, or **Robin Problem** if u is prescribed on a portion of C and u_n on the rest of C ("**Mixed boundary condition**").

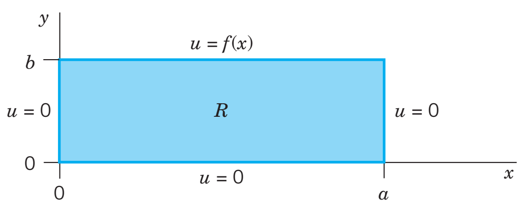


Fig. 296. Rectangle R and given boundary values

Dirichlet Problem in a Rectangle R (Fig. 296). We consider a Dirichlet problem for Laplace's equation (14) in a rectangle R, assuming that the temperature $u(x, y)$ equals a given function $f(x)$ on the upper side and 0 on the other three sides of the rectangle.

We solve this problem by separating variables. Substituting $u(x, y) = F(x)G(y)$ into (14) written as $u_{xx} = -u_{yy}$, dividing by FG, and equating both sides to a negative constant, we obtain

$$\frac{1}{F} \cdot \frac{d^2F}{dx^2} = -\frac{1}{G} \cdot \frac{d^2G}{dy^2} = -k.$$

From this we get

$$\frac{d^2F}{dx^2} + kF = 0,$$

and the left and right boundary conditions imply

$$F(0) = 0, \qquad \text{and} \qquad F(a) = 0.$$

This gives $k = (n\pi/a)^2$ and corresponding nonzero solutions

$$F(x) = F_n(x) = \sin \frac{n\pi}{a} x, \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots. \tag{15}$$

The ODE for G with $k = (n\pi/a)^2$ then becomes

$$\frac{d^2G}{dy^2} - \left(\frac{n\pi}{a}\right)^2 G = 0.$$

Solutions are

$$G(y) = G_n(y) = A_n e^{n\pi y/a} + B_n e^{-n\pi y/a}.$$

Now the boundary condition $u = 0$ on the lower side of R implies that $G_n(0) = 0$; that is, $G_n(0) = A_n + B_n = 0$ or $B_n = -A_n$. This gives

$$G_n(y) = A_n(e^{n\pi y/a} - e^{-n\pi y/a}) = 2A_n \sinh \frac{n\pi y}{a}.$$

From this and (15), writing $2A_n = A_n^*$, we obtain as the **eigenfunctions** of our problem

$$u_n(x, y) = F_n(x)G_n(y) = A_n^* \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a} \sinh \frac{n\pi y}{a}. \tag{16}$$

These solutions satisfy the boundary condition $u = 0$ on the left, right, and lower sides.

To get a solution also satisfying the boundary condition $u(x, b) = f(x)$ on the upper side, we consider the infinite series

$$u(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} u_n(x, y).$$

From this and (16) with $y = b$ we obtain

$$u(x, b) = f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n^* \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a} \sinh \frac{n\pi b}{a}.$$

We can write this in the form

$$u(x, b) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(A_n^* \sinh \frac{n\pi b}{a}\right) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a}.$$

This shows that the expressions in the parentheses must be the Fourier coefficients b_n of $f(x)$; that is, by (4) in Sec. 11.3,

$$b_n = A_n^* \sinh \frac{n\pi b}{a} = \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a}\, dx.$$

From this and (16) we see that the solution of our problem is

$$u(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} u_n(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n^* \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a} \sinh \frac{n\pi y}{a} \tag{17}$$

where

$$A_n^* = \frac{2}{a \sinh (n\pi b/a)} \int_0^a f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a}\, dx. \tag{18}$$

We have obtained this solution formally, neither considering convergence nor showing that the series for u, u_{xx}, and u_{yy} have the right sums. This can be proved if one assumes that f and f' are continuous and f'' is piecewise continuous on the interval $0 \leqq x \leqq a$. The proof is somewhat involved and relies on uniform convergence. It can be found in [C4] listed in App. 1.

Unifying Power of Methods. Electrostatics, Elasticity

The Laplace equation (14) also governs the electrostatic potential of electrical charges in any region that is free of these charges. Thus our steady-state heat problem can also be interpreted as an electrostatic potential problem. Then (17), (18) is the potential in the rectangle R when the upper side of R is at potential $f(x)$ and the other three sides are grounded.

Actually, in the steady-state case, the two-dimensional wave equation (to be considered in Secs. 12.8, 12.9) also reduces to (14). Then (17), (18) is the displacement of a rectangular elastic membrane (rubber sheet, drumhead) that is fixed along its boundary, with three sides lying in the xy-plane and the fourth side given the displacement $f(x)$.

This is another impressive demonstration of the ***unifying power*** of mathematics. It illustrates that ***entirely different physical systems may have the same mathematical model*** and can thus be treated by the same mathematical methods.

PROBLEM SET 12.6

1. **Decay.** How does the rate of decay of (8) with fixed n depend on the specific heat, the density, and the thermal conductivity of the material?
2. **Decay.** If the first eigenfunction (8) of the bar decreases to half its value within 20 sec, what is the value of the diffusivity?
3. **Eigenfunctions.** Sketch or graph and compare the first three eigenfunctions (8) with $B_n = 1, c = 1$, and $L = \pi$ for $t = 0, 0.1, 0.2, \cdots, 1.0$.
4. **WRITING PROJECT. Wave and Heat Equations.** Compare these PDEs with respect to general behavior of eigenfunctions and kind of boundary and initial

conditions. State the difference between Fig. 291 in Sec. 12.3 and Fig. 295.

5–7 LATERALLY INSULATED BAR

Find the temperature $u(x, t)$ in a bar of silver of length 10 cm and constant cross section of area 1 cm^2 (density 10.6 g/cm^3, thermal conductivity 1.04 cal/(cm sec °C), specific heat 0.056 cal/(g °C) that is perfectly insulated laterally, with ends kept at temperature 0°C and initial temperature $f(x)$ °C, where

5. $f(x) = \sin 0.1\pi x$
6. $f(x) = 4 - 0.8|x - 5|$
7. $f(x) = x(10 - x)$
8. **Arbitrary temperatures at ends.** If the ends $x = 0$ and $x = L$ of the bar in the text are kept at constant temperatures U_1 and U_2, respectively, what is the temperature $u_1(x)$ in the bar after a long time (theoretically, as $t \to \infty$)? First guess, then calculate.
9. In Prob. 8 find the temperature at any time.
10. **Change of end temperatures.** Assume that the ends of the bar in Probs. 5–7 have been kept at 100°C for a long time. Then at some instant, call it $t = 0$, the temperature at $x = L$ is suddenly changed to 0°C and kept at 0°C, whereas the temperature at $x = 0$ is kept at 100°C. Find the temperature in the middle of the bar at $t = 1, 2, 3, 10, 50$ sec. First guess, then calculate.

BAR UNDER ADIABATIC CONDITIONS

"Adiabatic" means no heat exchange with the neighborhood, because the bar is completely insulated, also at the ends. *Physical Information:* The heat flux at the ends is proportional to the value of $\partial u/\partial x$ there.

11. Show that for the completely insulated bar, $u_x(0, t) = 0$, $u_x(L, t) = 0$, $u(x, t) = f(x)$ and separation of variables gives the following solution, with A_n given by (2) in Sec. 11.3.

$$u(x, t) = A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L} e^{-(cn\pi/L)^2 t}$$

12–15 Find the temperature in Prob. 11 with $L = \pi$, $c = 1$, and

12. $f(x) = x$
13. $f(x) = 1$
14. $f(x) = \cos 2x$
15. $f(x) = 1 - x/\pi$
16. **A bar with heat generation** of constant rate $H\ (>0)$ is modeled by $u_t = c^2 u_{xx} + H$. Solve this problem if $L = \pi$ and the ends of the bar are kept at 0°C. *Hint.* Set $u = v - Hx(x - \pi)/(2c^2)$.
17. **Heat flux.** The *heat flux* of a solution $u(x, t)$ across $x = 0$ is defined by $\phi(t) = -Ku_x(0, t)$. Find $\phi(t)$ for the solution (9). Explain the name. Is it physically understandable that ϕ goes to 0 as $t \to \infty$?

18–25 TWO-DIMENSIONAL PROBLEMS

18. **Laplace equation.** Find the potential in the rectangle $0 \leqq x \leqq 20$, $0 \leqq y \leqq 40$ whose upper side is kept at potential 110 V and whose other sides are grounded.
19. Find the potential in the square $0 \leqq x \leqq 2$, $0 \leqq y \leqq 2$ if the upper side is kept at the potential $1000 \sin \frac{1}{2}\pi x$ and the other sides are grounded.
20. **CAS PROJECT. Isotherms.** Find the steady-state solutions (temperatures) in the square plate in Fig. 297 with $a = 2$ satisfying the following boundary conditions. Graph isotherms.

    (a) $u = 80 \sin \pi x$ on the upper side, 0 on the others.

    (b) $u = 0$ on the vertical sides, assuming that the other sides are perfectly insulated.

    (c) Boundary conditions of your choice (such that the solution is not identically zero).

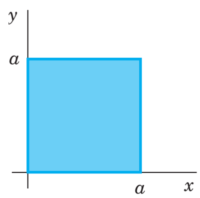


Fig. 297. Square plate

21. **Heat flow in a plate.** The faces of the thin square plate in Fig. 297 with side $a = 24$ are perfectly insulated. The upper side is kept at 25°C and the other sides are kept at 0°C. Find the steady-state temperature $u(x, y)$ in the plate.
22. Find the steady-state temperature in the plate in Prob. 21 if the lower side is kept at U_0°C, the upper side at U_1°C, and the other sides are kept at 0°C. *Hint:* Split into two problems in which the boundary temperature is 0 on three sides for each problem.
23. **Mixed boundary value problem.** Find the steady-state temperature in the plate in Prob. 21 with the upper and lower sides perfectly insulated, the left side kept at 0°C, and the right side kept at $f(y)$°C.
24. **Radiation.** Find steady-state temperatures in the rectangle in Fig. 296 with the upper and left sides perfectly insulated and the right side radiating into a medium at 0°C according to $u_x(a, y) + hu(a, y) = 0$, $h > 0$ constant. (You will get many solutions since no condition on the lower side is given.)
25. Find formulas similar to (17), (18) for the temperature in the rectangle R of the text when the lower side of R is kept at temperature $f(x)$ and the other sides are kept at 0°C.

12.7 Heat Equation: Modeling Very Long Bars. Solution by Fourier Integrals and Transforms

Our discussion of the heat equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \tag{1}$$

in the last section extends to bars of infinite length, which are good models of very long bars or wires (such as a wire of length, say, 300 ft). Then the role of Fourier series in the solution process will be taken by **Fourier integrals** (Sec. 11.7).

Let us illustrate the method by solving (1) for a bar that extends to infinity on both sides (and is laterally insulated as before). Then we do not have boundary conditions, but only the **initial condition**

$$u(x, 0) = f(x) \qquad (-\infty < x < \infty) \tag{2}$$

where $f(x)$ is the given initial temperature of the bar.

To solve this problem, we start as in the last section, substituting $u(x, t) = F(x)G(t)$ into (1). This gives the two ODEs

$$F'' + p^2 F = 0 \qquad \text{[see (5), Sec. 12.6]} \tag{3}$$

and

$$\dot{G} + c^2 p^2 G = 0 \qquad \text{[see (6), Sec. 12.6].} \tag{4}$$

Solutions are

$$F(x) = A \cos px + B \sin px \qquad \text{and} \qquad G(t) = e^{-c^2p^2t},$$

respectively, where A and B are any constants. Hence a solution of (1) is

$$u(x, t; p) = FG = (A \cos px + B \sin px)\, e^{-c^2p^2t}. \tag{5}$$

Here we had to choose the separation constant k negative, $k = -p^2$, because positive values of k would lead to an increasing exponential function in (5), which has no physical meaning.

Use of Fourier Integrals

Any series of functions (5), found in the usual manner by taking p as multiples of a fixed number, would lead to a function that is periodic in x when $t = 0$. However, since $f(x)$

in (2) is not assumed to be periodic, it is natural to use **Fourier integrals** instead of Fourier series. Also, A and B in (5) are arbitrary and we may regard them as functions of p, writing $A = A(p)$ and $B = B(P)$. Now, since the heat equation (1) is linear and homogeneous, the function

$$u(x, t) = \int_0^\infty u(x, t; p)\, dp = \int_0^\infty [A(p) \cos px + B(p) \sin px]\, e^{-c^2p^2t}\, dp \tag{6}$$

is then a solution of (1), provided this integral exists and can be differentiated twice with respect to x and once with respect to t.

Determination of $A(p)$ and $B(p)$ from the Initial Condition. From (6) and (2) we get

$$u(x, 0) = \int_0^\infty [A(p) \cos px + B(p) \sin px]\, dp = f(x). \tag{7}$$

This gives $A(p)$ and $B(p)$ in terms of $f(x)$; indeed, from (4) in Sec. 11.7 we have

$$A(p) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \cos pv\, dv, \qquad B(p) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \sin pv\, dv. \tag{8}$$

According to (1*), Sec. 11.9, our Fourier integral (7) with these $A(p)$ and $B(p)$ can be written

$$u(x, 0) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^\infty \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \cos(px - pv)\, dv\right] dp.$$

Similarly, (6) in this section becomes

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^\infty \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \cos(px - pv)\, e^{-c^2p^2t}\, dv\right] dp.$$

Assuming that we may reverse the order of integration, we obtain

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v)\left[\int_0^\infty e^{-c^2p^2t} \cos(px - pv)\, dp\right] dv. \tag{9}$$

Then we can evaluate the inner integral by using the formula

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-s^2} \cos 2bs\, ds = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}\, e^{-b^2}. \tag{10}$$

[A derivation of (10) is given in Problem Set 16.4 (Team Project 24).] This takes the form of our inner integral if we choose $p = s/(c\sqrt{t})$ as a new variable of integration and set

$$b = \frac{x - v}{2c\sqrt{t}}.$$

Then $2bs = (x - v)p$ and $ds = c\sqrt{t}\,dp$, so that (10) becomes

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-c^2p^2t} \cos(px - pv)\, dp = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2c\sqrt{t}} \exp\left\{-\frac{(x-v)^2}{4c^2t}\right\}.$$

By inserting this result into (9) we obtain the representation

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2c\sqrt{\pi t}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \exp\left\{-\frac{(x-v)^2}{4c^2t}\right\} dv. \tag{11}$$

Taking $z = (v - x)/(2c\sqrt{t})$ as a variable of integration, we get the alternative form

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x + 2cz\sqrt{t})\, e^{-z^2}\, dz. \tag{12}$$

If $f(x)$ is bounded for all values of x and integrable in every finite interval, it can be shown (see Ref. [C10]) that the function (11) or (12) satisfies (1) and (2). Hence this function is the required solution in the present case.

EXAMPLE 1 Temperature in an Infinite Bar

Find the temperature in the infinite bar if the initial temperature is (Fig. 298)

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} U_0 = \text{const} & \text{if } |x| < 1, \\ 0 & \text{if } |x| > 1. \end{cases}$$

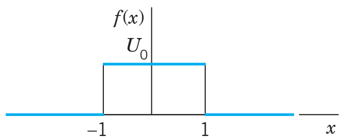


Fig. 298. Initial temperature in Example 1

Solution. From (11) we have

$$u(x, t) = \frac{U_0}{2c\sqrt{\pi t}} \int_{-1}^{1} \exp\left\{-\frac{(x-v)^2}{4c^2t}\right\} dv.$$

If we introduce the above variable of integration z, then the integration over v from -1 to 1 corresponds to the integration over z from $(-1 - x)/(2c\sqrt{t})$ to $(1 - x)/(2c\sqrt{t})$, and

$$u(x, t) = \frac{U_0}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_{-(1+x)/(2c\sqrt{t})}^{(1-x)/(2c\sqrt{t})} e^{-z^2} dz \qquad (t > 0). \tag{13}$$

We mention that this integral is not an elementary function, but can be expressed in terms of the error function, whose values have been tabulated. (Table A4 in App. 5 contains a few values; larger tables are listed in Ref. [GenRef1] in App. 1. See also CAS Project 1, p. 574.) Figure 299 shows $u(x, t)$ for $U_0 = 100°\text{C}$, $c^2 = 1\ \text{cm}^2/\text{sec}$, and several values of t. ■

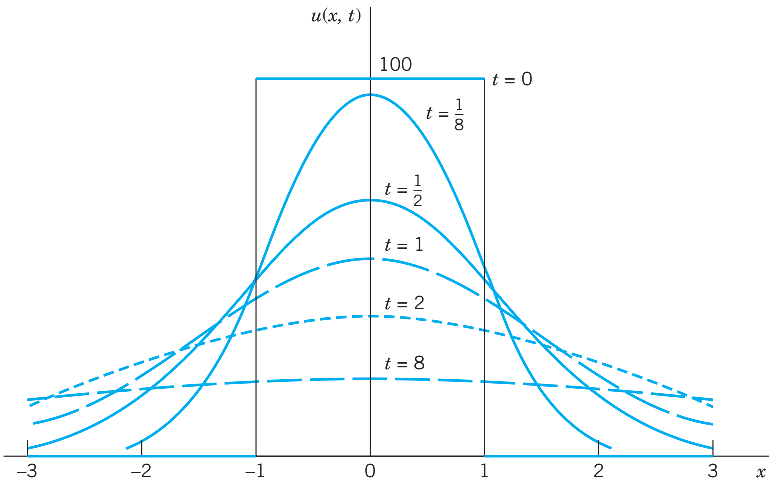


Fig. 299. Solution $u(x, t)$ in Example 1 for $U_0 = 100°C$, $c^2 = 1\ \text{cm}^2/\text{sec}$, and several values of t

Use of Fourier Transforms

The Fourier transform is closely related to the Fourier integral, from which we obtained the transform in Sec. 11.9. And the transition to the Fourier cosine and sine transform in Sec. 11.8 was even simpler. (You may perhaps wish to review this before going on.) Hence it should not surprise you that we can use these transforms for solving our present or similar problems. The Fourier transform applies to problems concerning the entire axis, and the Fourier cosine and sine transforms to problems involving the positive half-axis. Let us explain these transform methods by typical applications that fit our present discussion.

EXAMPLE 2 Temperature in the Infinite Bar in Example 1

Solve Example 1 using the Fourier transform.

Solution. The problem consists of the heat equation (1) and the initial condition (2), which in this example is

$$f(x) = U_0 = \text{const} \quad \text{if } |x| < 1 \qquad \text{and 0 otherwise.}$$

Our strategy is to take the Fourier transform with respect to x and then to solve the resulting ***ordinary*** DE in t. The details are as follows.

Let $\hat{u} = \mathcal{F}(u)$ denote the Fourier transform of u, ***regarded as a function of x***. From (10) in Sec. 11.9 we see that the heat equation (1) gives

$$\mathcal{F}(u_t) = c^2\mathcal{F}(u_{xx}) = c^2(-w^2)\mathcal{F}(u) = -c^2w^2\hat{u}.$$

On the left, assuming that we may interchange the order of differentiation and integration, we have

$$\mathcal{F}(u_t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} u_t e^{-iwx}\,dx = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} ue^{-iwx}\,dx = \frac{\partial\hat{u}}{\partial t}.$$

Thus

$$\frac{\partial\hat{u}}{\partial t} = -c^2w^2\hat{u}.$$

Since this equation involves only a derivative with respect to t but none with respect to w, this is a first-order ***ordinary DE***, with t as the independent variable and w as a parameter. By separating variables (Sec. 1.3) we get the general solution

$$\hat{u}(w, t) = C(w)e^{-c^2w^2t}$$

with the arbitrary "constant" $C(w)$ depending on the parameter w. The initial condition (2) yields the relationship $\hat{u}(w, 0) = C(w) = \hat{f}(w) = \mathscr{F}(f)$. Our intermediate result is

$$\hat{u}(w, t) = \hat{f}(w)e^{-c^2w^2t}.$$

The inversion formula (7), Sec. 11.9, now gives the solution

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{f}(w)\, e^{-c^2w^2t}\, e^{iwx}\, dw. \tag{14}$$

In this solution we may insert the Fourier transform

$$\hat{f}(w) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v)e^{ivw} dv.$$

Assuming that we may invert the order of integration, we then obtain

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-c^2w^2t}\, e^{i(wx-wv)} dw \right] dv.$$

By the Euler formula (3). Sec. 11.9, the integrand of the inner integral equals

$$e^{-c^2w^2t} \cos(wx - wv) + ie^{-c^2w^2t} \sin(wx - wv).$$

We see that its imaginary part is an odd function of w, so that its integral is 0. (More precisely, this is the principal part of the integral; see Sec. 16.4.) The real part is an even function of w, so that its integral from $-\infty$ to ∞ equals twice the integral from 0 to ∞:

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \left[\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-c^2w^2t} \cos(wx - wv)\, dw \right] dv.$$

This agrees with (9) (with $p = w$) and leads to the further formulas (11) and (13). ■

EXAMPLE 3 **Solution in Example 1 by the Method of Convolution**

Solve the heat problem in Example 1 by the method of convolution.

Solution. The beginning is as in Example 2 and leads to (14), that is,

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{f}(w)e^{-c^2w^2t}e^{iwx}\, dw. \tag{15}$$

Now comes the crucial idea. We recognize that this is of the form (13) in Sec. 11.9, that is,

$$u(x, t) = (f * g)(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{f}(w)\hat{g}(w)e^{iwx}\, dw \tag{16}$$

where

$$\hat{g}(w) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\, e^{-c^2w^2t}. \tag{17}$$

Since, by the definition of convolution [(11), Sec. 11.9],

$$(f * g)(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(p)g(x - p)\, dp, \tag{18}$$

as our next and last step we must determine the inverse Fourier transform g of $\hat{g}$. For this we can use formula 9 in Table III of Sec. 11.10,

$$\mathcal{F}(e^{-ax^2}) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2a}} e^{-w^2/(4a)}$$

with a suitable a. With $c^2t = 1/(4a)$ or $a = 1/(4c^2t)$, using (17) we obtain

$$\mathcal{F}(e^{-x^2/(4c^2t)}) = \sqrt{2c^2t}\, e^{-c^2w^2t} = \sqrt{2c^2t}\,\sqrt{2\pi}\,\hat{g}(w).$$

Hence $\hat{g}$ has the inverse

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2c^2t}\,\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-x^2/(4c^2t)}.$$

Replacing x with $x - p$ and substituting this into (18) we finally have

$$u(x, t) = (f * g)(x) = \frac{1}{2c\sqrt{\pi t}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(p) \exp\left\{-\frac{(x-p)^2}{4c^2t}\right\} dp. \tag{19}$$

This solution formula of our problem agrees with (11). We wrote $(f * g)(x)$, without indicating the parameter t with respect to which we did not integrate. ■

EXAMPLE 4 Fourier Sine Transform Applied to the Heat Equation

If a laterally insulated bar extends from $x = 0$ to infinity, we can use the Fourier sine transform. We let the initial temperature be $u(x, 0) = f(x)$ and impose the boundary condition $u(0, t) = 0$. Then from the heat equation and (9b) in Sec. 11.8, since $f(0) = u(0, 0) = 0$, we obtain

$$\mathcal{F}_s(u_t) = \frac{\partial \hat{u}_s}{\partial t} = c^2\mathcal{F}_s(u_{xx}) = -c^2w^2\mathcal{F}_s(u) = -c^2w^2\hat{u}_s(w, t).$$

This is a first-order ODE $\partial\hat{u}_s/\partial t + c^2w^2\hat{u}_s = 0$. Its solution is

$$\hat{u}_s(w, t) = C(w)e^{-c^2w^2t}.$$

From the initial condition $u(x, 0) = f(x)$ we have $\hat{u}_s(w, 0) = \hat{f}_s(w) = C(w)$. Hence

$$\hat{u}_s(w, t) = \hat{f}_s(w)e^{-c^2w^2t}.$$

Taking the inverse Fourier sine transform and substituting

$$\hat{f}_s(w) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^{\infty} f(p) \sin wp\, dp$$

on the right, we obtain the solution formula

$$u(x, t) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} \int_0^{\infty} f(p) \sin wp\, e^{-c^2w^2t} \sin wx\, dp\, dw. \tag{20}$$

Figure 300 shows (20) with $c = 1$ for $f(x) = 1$ if $0 \leqq x \leqq 1$ and 0 otherwise, graphed over the xt-plane for $0 \leqq x \leqq 2$, $0.01 \leqq t \leqq 1.5$. Note that the curves of $u(x, t)$ for constant t resemble those in Fig. 299. ■

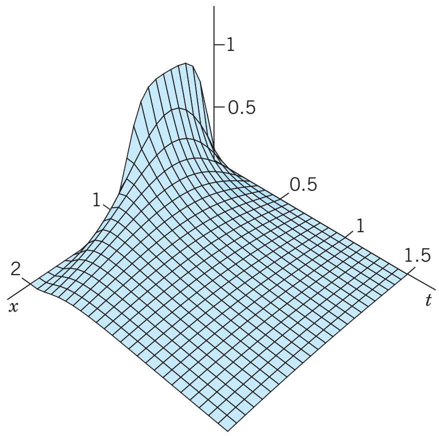


Fig. 300. Solution (20) in Example 4

PROBLEM SET 12.7

1. **CAS PROJECT. Heat Flow. (a)** Graph the basic Fig. 299.

   (b) In (a) apply animation to "see" the heat flow in terms of the decrease of temperature.

   (c) Graph $u(x, t)$ with $c = 1$ as a surface over a rectangle of the form $-a < x < a, \quad 0 < y < b$.

2–8 SOLUTION IN INTEGRAL FORM

Using (6), obtain the solution of (1) in integral form satisfying the initial condition $u(x, 0) = f(x)$, where

2. $f(x) = 1$ if $|x| < a$ and 0 otherwise
3. $f(x) = 1/(1 + x^2)$.
   Hint. Use (15) in Sec. 11.7.
4. $f(x) = e^{-|x|}$
5. $f(x) = |x|$ if $|x| < 1$ and 0 otherwise
6. $f(x) = x$ if $|x| < 1$ and 0 otherwise
7. $f(x) = (\sin x)/x$.
   Hint. Use Prob. 4 in Sec. 11.7.
8. Verify that u in the solution of Prob. 7 satisfies the initial condition.

9–12 CAS PROJECT. Error Function.

$$\text{erf}\, x = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^x e^{-w^2}\, dw \tag{21}$$

This function is important in applied mathematics and physics (probability theory and statistics, thermodynamics, etc.) and fits our present discussion. Regarding it as a typical case of a special function defined by an integral that cannot be evaluated as in elementary calculus, do the following.

9. Graph the **bell-shaped curve** [the curve of the integrand in (21)]. Show that erf x is odd. Show that

$$\int_a^b e^{-w^2}\, dw = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}(\text{erf}\, b - \text{erf}\, a).$$

$$\int_{-b}^b e^{-w^2}\, dw = \sqrt{\pi}\, \text{erf}\, b.$$

10. Obtain the Maclaurin series of erf x from that of the integrand. Use that series to compute a table of erf x for $x = 0(0.01)3$ (meaning $x = 0, 0.01, 0.02, \cdots, 3$).
11. Obtain the values required in Prob. 10 by an integration command of your CAS. Compare accuracy.
12. It can be shown that erf $(\infty) = 1$. Confirm this experimentally by computing erf x for large x.
13. Let $f(x) = 1$ when $x > 0$ and 0 when $x < 0$. Using erf $(\infty) = 1$, show that (12) then gives

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_{-x/(2c\sqrt{t})}^{\infty} e^{-x^2} dz$$
$$= \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\, \text{erf}\left(-\frac{x}{2c\sqrt{t}}\right) \quad (t > 0).$$

14. Express the temperature (13) in terms of the error function.
15. Show that $\Phi(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \displaystyle\int_{-\infty}^{x} e^{-s^2/2}\, ds$

$$= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\, \text{erf}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}}\right).$$

   Here, the integral is the definition of the "distribution function of the normal probability distribution" to be discussed in Sec. 24.8.

12.8 Modeling: Membrane, Two-Dimensional Wave Equation

Since the modeling here will be similar to that of Sec. 12.2, you may want to take another look at Sec. 12.2.

The vibrating string in Sec. 12.2 is a basic one-dimensional vibrational problem. Equally important is its two-dimensional analog, namely, the motion of an elastic membrane, such as a drumhead, that is stretched and then fixed along its edge. Indeed, setting up the model will proceed almost as in Sec. 12.2.

Physical Assumptions

1. The mass of the membrane per unit area is constant ("homogeneous membrane"). The membrane is perfectly flexible and offers no resistance to bending.
2. The membrane is stretched and then fixed along its entire boundary in the xy-plane. The tension per unit length T caused by stretching the membrane is the same at all points and in all directions and does not change during the motion.
3. The deflection $u(x, y, t)$ of the membrane during the motion is small compared to the size of the membrane, and all angles of inclination are small.

Although these assumptions cannot be realized exactly, they hold relatively accurately for small transverse vibrations of a thin elastic membrane, so that we shall obtain a good model, for instance, of a drumhead.

Derivation of the PDE of the Model ("Two-Dimensional Wave Equation") from Forces. As in Sec. 12.2 the model will consist of a PDE and additional conditions. The PDE will be obtained by the same method as in Sec. 12.2, namely, by considering the forces acting on a small portion of the physical system, the membrane in Fig. 301 on the next page, as it is moving up and down.

Since the deflections of the membrane and the angles of inclination are small, the sides of the portion are approximately equal to Δx and Δy. The tension T is the force per unit length. Hence the forces acting on the sides of the portion are approximately $T\,\Delta x$ and $T\,\Delta y$. Since the membrane is perfectly flexible, these forces are tangent to the moving membrane at every instant.

Horizontal Components of the Forces. We first consider the horizontal components of the forces. These components are obtained by multiplying the forces by the cosines of the angles of inclination. Since these angles are small, their cosines are close to 1. Hence the horizontal components of the forces at opposite sides are approximately equal. Therefore, the motion of the particles of the membrane in a horizontal direction will be negligibly small. From this we conclude that we may regard the motion of the membrane as transversal; that is, each particle moves vertically.

Vertical Components of the Forces. These components along the right side and the left side are (Fig. 301), respectively,

$$T\,\Delta y \sin\beta \qquad \text{and} \qquad -T\,\Delta y \sin\alpha.$$

Here α and β are the values of the angle of inclination (which varies slightly along the edges) in the middle of the edges, and the minus sign appears because the force on the

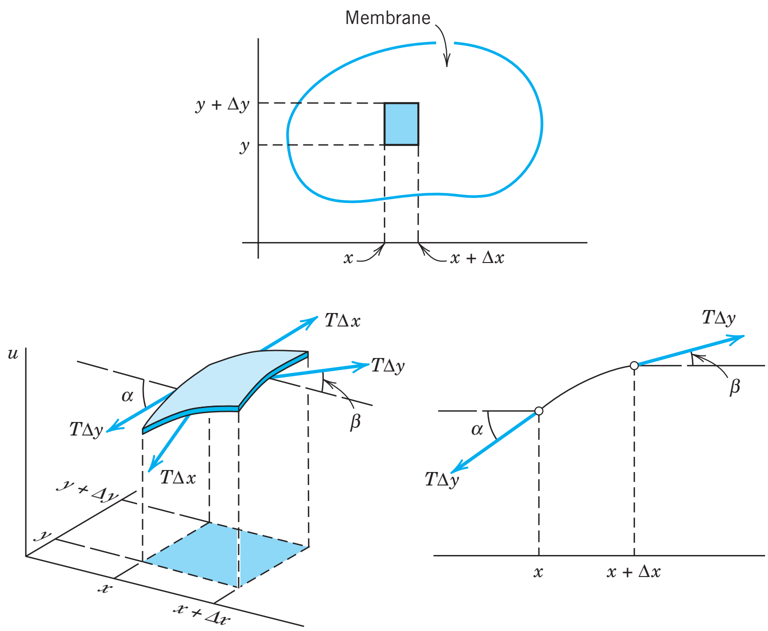


Fig. 301. Vibrating membrane

left side is directed downward. Since the angles are small, we may replace their sines by their tangents. Hence the resultant of those two vertical components is

$$
\begin{aligned}
(1) \qquad T\,\Delta y(\sin\beta - \sin\alpha) &\approx T\,\Delta y(\tan\beta - \tan\alpha) \\
&= T\,\Delta y[u_x(x + \Delta x, y_1) - u_x(x, y_2)]
\end{aligned}
$$

where subscripts x denote partial derivatives and y_1 and y_2 are values between y and $y + \Delta y$. Similarly, the resultant of the vertical components of the forces acting on the other two sides of the portion is

$$
(2) \qquad T\,\Delta x[u_y(x_1, y + \Delta y) - u_y(x_2, y)]
$$

where x_1 and x_2 are values between x and $x + \Delta x$.

Newton's Second Law Gives the PDE of the Model. By Newton's second law (see Sec. 2.4) the sum of the forces given by (1) and (2) is equal to the mass $\rho\,\Delta A$ of that small portion times the acceleration $\partial^2 u/\partial t^2$; here ρ is the mass of the undeflected membrane per unit area, and $\Delta A = \Delta x\,\Delta y$ is the area of that portion when it is undeflected. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
\rho \Delta x\, \Delta y \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} &= T\,\Delta y[u_x(x + \Delta x, y_1) - u_x(x, y_2)] \\
&\quad + T\,\Delta x[u_y(x_1, y + \Delta y) - u_y(x_2, y)]
\end{aligned}
$$

where the derivative on the left is evaluated at some suitable point $(\tilde{x}, \tilde{y})$ corresponding to that portion. Division by $\rho \Delta x\,\Delta y$ gives

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = \frac{T}{\rho}\left[\frac{u_x(x+\Delta x, y_1) - u_x(x, y_2)}{\Delta x} + \frac{u_y(x_1, y+\Delta y) - u_y(x_2, y)}{\Delta y}\right].$$

If we let Δx and Δy approach zero, we obtain the PDE of the model

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}\right) \qquad c^2 = \frac{T}{\rho}. \tag{3}$$

This PDE is called the **two-dimensional wave equation**. The expression in parentheses is the Laplacian $\Delta^2 u$ of u (Sec. 10.8). Hence (3) can be written

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \Delta^2 u. \tag{3$'$}$$

Solutions of the wave equation (3) will be obtained and discussed in the next section.

12.9 Rectangular Membrane. Double Fourier Series

Now we develop a solution for the PDE obtained in Sec. 12.8. Details are as follows.

The model of the vibrating membrane for obtaining the displacement $u(x, y, t)$ of a point (x, y) of the membrane from rest $(u = 0)$ at time t is

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}\right) \tag{1}$$

$$u = 0 \text{ on the boundary} \tag{2}$$

$$u(x, y, 0) = f(x, y) \tag{3a}$$

$$u_t(x, y, 0) = g(x, y). \tag{3b}$$

Here (1) is the **two-dimensional wave equation** with $c^2 = T/\rho$ just derived, (2) is the **boundary condition** (membrane fixed along the boundary in the xy-plane for all times $t \geqq 0$), and (3) are the **initial conditions** at $t = 0$, consisting of the given *initial displacement* (initial shape) $f(x, y)$ and the given *initial velocity* $g(x, y)$, where $u_t = \partial u/\partial t$. We see that these conditions are quite similar to those for the string in Sec. 12.2.

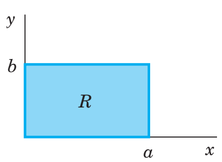


Fig. 302. Rectangular membrane

Let us consider the **rectangular membrane** R in Fig. 302. This is our first important model. It is much simpler than the circular drumhead, which will follow later. First we note that the boundary in equation (2) is the rectangle in Fig. 302. We shall solve this problem in three steps:

Step 1. By separating variables, first setting $u(x, y, t) = F(x, y)G(t)$ and later $F(x, y) = H(x)Q(y)$ we obtain from (1) an ODE (4) for G and later from a PDE (5) for F two ODEs (6) and (7) for H and Q.

Step 2. From the solutions of those ODEs we determine solutions (13) of (1) ("**eigenfunctions**" u_{mn}) that satisfy the boundary condition (2).

Step 3. We compose the u_{mn} into a double series (14) solving the whole model (1), (2), (3).

Step 1. Three ODEs From the Wave Equation (1)

To obtain ODEs from (1), we apply two successive separations of variables. In the first separation we set $u(x, y, t) = F(x, y)G(t)$. Substitution into (1) gives

$$F\ddot{G} = c^2(F_{xx}G + F_{yy}G)$$

where subscripts denote partial derivatives and dots denote derivatives with respect to t. To separate the variables, we divide both sides by c^2FG:

$$\frac{\ddot{G}}{c^2G} = \frac{1}{F}(F_{xx} + F_{yy}).$$

Since the left side depends only on t, whereas the right side is independent of t, both sides must equal a constant. By a simple investigation we see that only negative values of that constant will lead to solutions that satisfy (2) without being identically zero; this is similar to Sec. 12.3. Denoting that negative constant by $-\nu^2$, we have

$$\frac{\ddot{G}}{c^2G} = \frac{1}{F}(F_{xx} + F_{yy}) = -\nu^2.$$

This gives two equations: for the "**time function**" $G(t)$ we have the ODE

(4) $$\ddot{G} + \lambda^2 G = 0 \qquad \text{where } \lambda = c\nu,$$

and for the "**amplitude function**" $F(x, y)$ a PDE, called the *two-dimensional* **Helmholtz**[3] **equation**

(5) $$F_{xx} + F_{yy} + \nu^2 F = 0.$$

[3]HERMANN VON HELMHOLTZ (1821–1894), German physicist, known for his fundamental work in thermodynamics, fluid flow, and acoustics.

Separation of the Helmholtz equation is achieved if we set $F(x, y) = H(x)Q(y)$. By substitution of this into (5) we obtain

$$\frac{d^2H}{dx^2}Q = -\left(H\frac{d^2Q}{dy^2} + \nu^2 HQ\right).$$

To separate the variables, we divide both sides by HQ, finding

$$\frac{1}{H}\frac{d^2H}{dx^2} = -\frac{1}{Q}\left(\frac{d^2Q}{dy^2} + \nu^2 Q\right).$$

Both sides must equal a constant, by the usual argument. This constant must be negative, say, $-k^2$, because only negative values will lead to solutions that satisfy (2) without being identically zero. Thus

$$\frac{1}{H}\frac{d^2H}{dx^2} = -\frac{1}{Q}\left(\frac{d^2Q}{dy^2} + \nu^2 Q\right) = -k^2.$$

This yields two ODEs for H and Q, namely,

$$\boxed{\frac{d^2H}{dx^2} + k^2H = 0} \tag{6}$$

and

$$\boxed{\frac{d^2Q}{dy^2} + p^2Q = 0} \qquad \text{where } p^2 = \nu^2 - k^2. \tag{7}$$

Step 2. Satisfying the Boundary Condition

General solutions of (6) and (7) are

$$H(x) = A\cos kx + B\sin kx \qquad \text{and} \qquad Q(y) = C\cos py + D\sin py$$

with constant A, B, C, D. From $u = FG$ and (2) it follows that $F = HQ$ must be zero on the boundary, that is, on the edges $x = 0, x = a, y = 0, y = b$; see Fig. 302. This gives the conditions

$$H(0) = 0, \qquad H(a) = 0, \qquad Q(0) = 0, \qquad Q(b) = 0.$$

Hence $H(0) = A = 0$ and then $H(a) = B\sin ka = 0$. Here we must take $B \neq 0$ since otherwise $H(x) \equiv 0$ and $F(x, y) \equiv 0$. Hence $\sin ka = 0$ or $ka = m\pi$, that is,

$$k = \frac{m\pi}{a} \qquad (m \text{ integer}).$$

In precisely the same fashion we conclude that $C = 0$ and p must be restricted to the values $p = n\pi/b$ where n is an integer. We thus obtain the solutions $H = H_m$, $Q = Q_n$, where

$$H_m(x) = \sin\frac{m\pi x}{a} \quad \text{and} \quad Q_n(y) = \sin\frac{n\pi y}{b}, \qquad \begin{array}{l} m = 1, 2, \cdots, \\ n = 1, 2, \cdots. \end{array}$$

As in the case of the vibrating string, it is not necessary to consider $m, n = -1, -2, \cdots$ since the corresponding solutions are essentially the same as for positive m and n, expect for a factor -1. Hence the functions

$$F_{mn}(x, y) = H_m(x)Q_n(y) = \sin\frac{m\pi x}{a}\sin\frac{n\pi y}{b}, \qquad \begin{array}{l} m = 1, 2, \cdots, \\ n = 1, 2, \cdots, \end{array} \tag{8}$$

are solutions of the Helmholtz equation (5) that are zero on the boundary of our membrane.

Eigenfunctions and Eigenvalues. Having taken care of (5), we turn to (4). Since $p^2 = \nu^2 - k^2$ in (7) and $\lambda = c\nu$ in (4), we have

$$\lambda = c\sqrt{k^2 + p^2}.$$

Hence to $k = m\pi/a$ and $p = n\pi/b$ there corresponds the value

$$\lambda = \lambda_{mn} = c\pi\sqrt{\frac{m^2}{a^2} + \frac{n^2}{b^2}}, \qquad \begin{array}{l} m = 1, 2, \cdots, \\ n = 1, 2, \cdots, \end{array} \tag{9}$$

in the ODE (4). A corresponding general solution of (4) is

$$G_{mn}(t) = B_{mn}\cos\lambda_{mn}t + B^*_{mn}\sin\lambda_{mn}t.$$

It follows that the functions $u_{mn}(x, y, t) = F_{mn}(x, y)G_{mn}(t)$, written out

$$u_{mn}(x, y, t) = (B_{mn}\cos\lambda_{mn}t + B^*_{mn}\sin\lambda_{mn}t)\sin\frac{m\pi x}{a}\sin\frac{n\pi y}{b} \tag{10}$$

with λ_{mn} according to (9), are solutions of the wave equation (1) that are zero on the boundary of the rectangular membrane in Fig. 302. These functions are called the **eigenfunctions** or *characteristic functions,* and the numbers λ_{mn} are called the **eigenvalues** or *characteristic values* of the vibrating membrane. The frequency of u_{mn} is $\lambda_{mn}/2\pi$.

Discussion of Eigenfunctions. It is very interesting that, depending on a and b, several functions F_{mn} may correspond to the same eigenvalue. Physically this means that there may exists vibrations having the same frequency but entirely different **nodal lines** (curves of points on the membrane that do not move). Let us illustrate this with the following example.

EXAMPLE 1 Eigenvalues and Eigenfunctions of the Square Membrane

Consider the square membrane with $a = b = 1$. From (9) we obtain its eigenvalues

$$\lambda_{mn} = c\pi\sqrt{m^2 + n^2}. \tag{11}$$

Hence $\lambda_{mn} = \lambda_{nm}$, but for $m \neq n$ the corresponding functions

$$F_{mn} = \sin m\pi x \sin n\pi y \qquad \text{and} \qquad F_{nm} = \sin n\pi x \sin m\pi y$$

are certainly different. For example, to $\lambda_{12} = \lambda_{21} = c\pi\sqrt{5}$ there correspond the two functions

$$F_{12} = \sin \pi x \sin 2\pi y \qquad \text{and} \qquad F_{21} = \sin 2\pi x \sin \pi y.$$

Hence the corresponding solutions

$$u_{12} = (B_{12} \cos c\pi\sqrt{5}t + B^*_{12} \sin c\pi\sqrt{5}t)F_{12} \qquad \text{and} \qquad u_{21} = (B_{21} \cos c\pi\sqrt{5}t + B^*_{21} \sin c\pi\sqrt{5}t)F_{21}$$

have the nodal lines $y = \frac{1}{2}$ and $x = \frac{1}{2}$, respectively (see Fig. 303). Taking $B_{12} = 1$ and $B^*_{12} = B^*_{21} = 0$, we obtain

$$u_{12} + u_{21} = \cos c\pi\sqrt{5}t\,(F_{12} + B_{21}F_{21}) \tag{12}$$

which represents another vibration corresponding to the eigenvalue $c\pi\sqrt{5}$. The nodal line of this function is the solution of the equation

$$F_{12} + B_{21}F_{21} = \sin \pi x \sin 2\pi y + B_{21} \sin 2\pi x \sin \pi y = 0$$

or, since $\sin 2\alpha = 2 \sin \alpha \cos \alpha$,

$$\sin \pi x \sin \pi y(\cos \pi y + B_{21} \cos \pi x) = 0. \tag{13}$$

This solution depends on the value of B_{21} (see Fig. 304).

From (11) we see that even more than two functions may correspond to the same numerical value of λ_{mn}. For example, the four functions F_{18}, F_{81}, F_{47}, and F_{74} correspond to the value

$$\lambda_{18} = \lambda_{81} = \lambda_{47} = \lambda_{74} = c\pi\sqrt{65}, \qquad \text{because} \qquad 1^2 + 8^2 = 4^2 + 7^2 = 65.$$

This happens because 65 can be expressed as the sum of two squares of positive integers in several ways. According to a theorem by Gauss, this is the case for every sum of two squares among whose prime factors there are at least two different ones of the form $4n + 1$ where n is a positive integer. In our case we have $65 = 5 \cdot 13 = (4 + 1)(12 + 1)$. ■

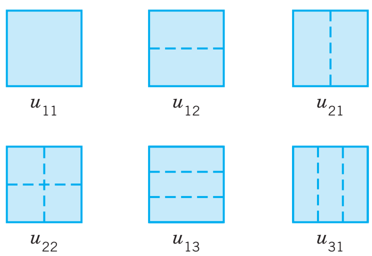


Fig. 303. Nodal lines of the solutions $u_{11}, u_{12}, u_{21}, u_{22}, u_{13}, u_{31}$ in the case of the square membrane

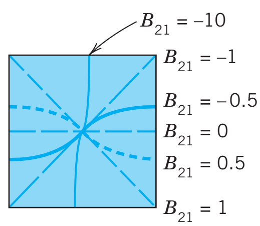


Fig. 304. Nodal lines of the solution (12) for some values of B_{21}

Step 3. Solution of the Model (1), (2), (3). Double Fourier Series

So far we have solutions (10) satisfying (1) and (2) only. To obtain the solutions that also satisfies (3), we proceed as in Sec. 12.3. We consider the double series

$$\begin{aligned} u(x, y, t) &= \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} u_{mn}(x, y, t) \\ &= \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (B_{mn} \cos \lambda_{mn} t + B^*_{mn} \sin \lambda_{mn} t) \sin \frac{m\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b} \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

(without discussing convergence and uniqueness). From (14) and (3a), setting $t = 0$, we have

$$u(x, y, 0) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_{mn} \sin \frac{m\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b} = f(x, y). \tag{15}$$

Suppose that $f(x, y)$ can be represented by (15). (Sufficient for this is the continuity of f, $\partial f/\partial x$, $\partial f/\partial y$, $\partial^2 f/\partial x\, \partial y$ in R.) Then (15) is called the **double Fourier series** of $f(x, y)$. Its coefficients can be determined as follows. Setting

$$K_m(y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_{mn} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b} \tag{16}$$

we can write (15) in the form

$$f(x, y) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} K_m(y) \sin \frac{m\pi x}{a}.$$

For fixed y this is the Fourier sine series of $f(x, y)$, considered as a function of x. From (4) in Sec. 11.3 we see that the coefficients of this expansion are

$$K_m(y) = \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a f(x, y) \sin \frac{m\pi x}{a}\, dx. \tag{17}$$

Furthermore, (16) is the Fourier sine series of $K_m(y)$, and from (4) in Sec. 11.3 it follows that the coefficients are

$$B_{mn} = \frac{2}{b} \int_0^b K_m(y) \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b}\, dy.$$

From this and (17) we obtain the **generalized Euler formula**

$$B_{mn} = \frac{4}{ab} \int_0^b \int_0^a f(x, y) \sin \frac{m\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b}\, dx\, dy \qquad \begin{aligned} m &= 1, 2, \cdots \\ n &= 1, 2, \cdots \end{aligned} \tag{18}$$

for the **Fourier coefficients** of $f(x, y)$ in the double Fourier series (15).

The B_{mn} in (14) are now determined in terms of $f(x, y)$. To determine the B^*_{mn}, we differentiate (14) termwise with respect to t; using (3b), we obtain

$$\left.\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right|_{t=0} = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B^*_{mn}\lambda_{mn}\sin\frac{m\pi x}{a}\sin\frac{n\pi y}{b} = g(x, y).$$

Suppose that $g(x, y)$ can be developed in this double Fourier series. Then, proceeding as before, we find that the coefficients are

$$\textbf{(19)}\qquad B^*_{mn} = \frac{4}{ab\lambda_{mn}}\int_0^b\int_0^a g(x, y)\sin\frac{m\pi x}{a}\sin\frac{n\pi y}{a}\,dx\,dy \qquad \begin{array}{l} m = 1, 2, \cdots \\ n = 1, 2, \cdots . \end{array}$$

Result. *If f and g in* (3) *are such that u can be represented by* (14), *then* (14) *with coefficients* (18) *and* (19) *is the solution of the model* (1), (2), (3).

EXAMPLE 2 **Vibration of a Rectangular Membrane**

Find the vibrations of a rectangular membrane of sides $a = 4$ ft and $b = 2$ ft (Fig. 305) if the tension is 12.5 lb/ft, the density is 2.5 slugs/ft^2 (as for light rubber), the initial velocity is 0, and the initial displacement is

$$(20)\qquad f(x, y) = 0.1(4x - x^2)(2y - y^2) \text{ ft.}$$

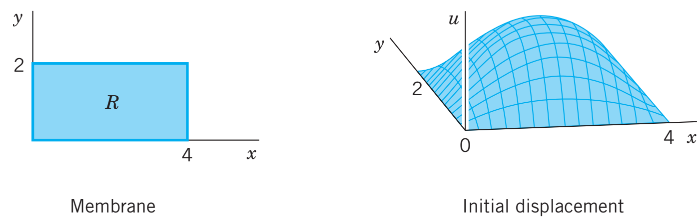


Fig. 305. Example 2

Solution. $c^2 = T/\rho = 12.5/2.5 = 5$ [ft^2/sec^2]. Also $B^*_{mn} = 0$ from (19). From (18) and (20),

$$B_{mn} = \frac{4}{4\cdot 2}\int_0^2\int_0^4 0.1(4x - x^2)(2y - y^2)\sin\frac{m\pi x}{4}\sin\frac{n\pi y}{2}\,dx\,dy$$

$$= \frac{1}{20}\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\sin\frac{m\pi x}{4}dx\int_0^2 (2y - y^2)\sin\frac{n\pi y}{2}dy.$$

Two integrations by parts give for the first integral on the right

$$\frac{128}{m^3\pi^3}[1 - (-1)^m] = \frac{256}{m^3\pi^3} \qquad (m \text{ odd})$$

and for the second integral

$$\frac{16}{n^3\pi^3}[1 - (-1)^n] = \frac{32}{n^3\pi^3} \qquad (n \text{ odd}).$$

For even m or n we get 0. Together with the factor 1/20 we thus have $B_{mn} = 0$ if m or n is even and

$$B_{mn} = \frac{256 \cdot 32}{20m^3n^3\pi^6} \approx \frac{0.426050}{m^3n^3} \qquad (m \text{ and } n \text{ both odd}).$$

From this, (9), and (14) we obtain the answer

$$u(x, y, t) = 0.426050 \sum_{m,n \text{ odd}} \sum \frac{1}{m^3n^3} \cos\left(\frac{\sqrt{5}\pi}{4}\sqrt{m^2 + 4n^2}\right) t \sin\frac{m\pi x}{4} \sin\frac{n\pi y}{2}$$

$$(21) \qquad = 0.426050\left(\cos\frac{\sqrt{5}\pi\sqrt{5}}{4} t \sin\frac{\pi x}{4} \sin\frac{\pi y}{2} + \frac{1}{27}\cos\frac{\sqrt{5}\pi\sqrt{37}}{4} t \sin\frac{\pi x}{4} \sin\frac{3\pi y}{2}\right.$$
$$\left. + \frac{1}{27}\cos\frac{\sqrt{5}\pi\sqrt{13}}{4} t \sin\frac{3\pi x}{4} \sin\frac{\pi y}{2} + \frac{1}{729}\cos\frac{\sqrt{5}\pi\sqrt{45}}{4} t \sin\frac{3\pi x}{4} \sin\frac{3\pi y}{2} + \cdots\right).$$

To discuss this solution, we note that the first term is very similar to the initial shape of the membrane, has no nodal lines, and is by far the dominating term because the coefficients of the next terms are much smaller. The second term has two horizontal nodal lines ($y = \frac{2}{3}, \frac{4}{3}$), the third term two vertical ones ($x = \frac{4}{3}, \frac{8}{3}$), the fourth term two horizontal and two vertical ones, and so on. ∎

PROBLEM SET 12.9

1. **Frequency.** How does the frequency of the eigenfunctions of the rectangular membrane change (a) If we double the tension? (b) If we take a membrane of half the density of the original one? (c) If we double the sides of the membrane? Give reasons.
2. **Assumptions.** Which part of Assumption 2 cannot be satisfied exactly? Why did we also assume that the angles of inclination are small?
3. Determine and sketch the nodal lines of the square membrane for $m = 1, 2, 3, 4$ and $n = 1, 2, 3, 4$.

4–8 DOUBLE FOURIER SERIES

Represent $f(x, y)$ by a series (15), where

4. $f(x, y) = 1, \quad a = b = 1$
5. $f(x, y) = y, \quad a = b = 1$
6. $f(x, y) = x, \quad a = b = 1$
7. $f(x, y) = xy, \quad a$ and b arbitrary
8. $f(x, y) = xy(a - x)(b - y), \quad a$ and b arbitrary
9. **CAS PROJECT. Double Fourier Series. (a)** Write a program that gives and graphs partial sums of (15). Apply it to Probs. 5 and 6. Do the graphs show that those partial sums satisfy the boundary condition (3a)? Explain why. Why is the convergence rapid?

   (b) Do the tasks in (a) for Prob. 4. Graph a portion, say, $0 < x < \frac{1}{2}, 0 < y < \frac{1}{2}$, of several partial sums on common axes, so that you can see how they differ. (See Fig. 306.)

   (c) Do the tasks in (b) for functions of your choice.

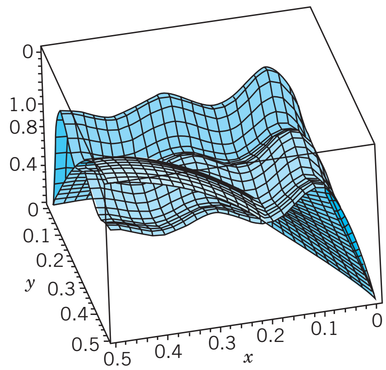


Fig. 306. Partial sums $S_{2,2}$ and $S_{10,10}$ in CAS Project 9b

10. **CAS EXPERIMENT. Quadruples of F_{mn}.** Write a program that gives you four numerically equal λ_{mn} in Example 1, so that four different F_{mn} correspond to it. Sketch the nodal lines of F_{18}, F_{81}, F_{47}, F_{74} in Example 1 and similarly for further F_{mn} that you will find.

11–13 SQUARE MEMBRANE

Find the deflection $u(x, y, t)$ of the square membrane of side π and $c^2 = 1$ for initial velocity 0 and initial deflection

11. $0.1 \sin 2x \sin 4y$
12. $0.01 \sin x \sin y$
13. $0.1xy(\pi - x)(\pi - y)$

14–19 RECTANGULAR MEMBRANE

14. Verify the discussion of (21) in Example 2.

15. Do Prob. 3 for the membrane with $a = 4$ and $b = 2$.

16. Verify B_{mn} in Example 2 by integration by parts.

17. Find eigenvalues of the rectangular membrane of sides $a = 2$ and $b = 1$ to which there correspond two or more different (independent) eigenfunctions.

18. Minimum property. Show that among all rectangular membranes of the same area $A = ab$ and the same c the square membrane is that for which u_{11} [see (10)] has the lowest frequency.

19. Deflection. Find the deflection of the membrane of sides a and b with $c^2 = 1$ for the initial deflection

$$f(x, y) = \sin \frac{6\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{2\pi y}{b} \text{ and initial velocity 0.}$$

20. Forced vibrations. Show that forced vibrations of a membrane are modeled by the PDE $u_{tt} = c^2\nabla^2 u + P/\rho$, where $P(x, y, t)$ is the external force per unit area acting perpendicular to the xy-plane.

12.10 Laplacian in Polar Coordinates. Circular Membrane. Fourier–Bessel Series

It is a ***general principle*** in boundary value problems for PDEs to *choose coordinates that make the formula for the boundary as simple as possible*. Here polar coordinates are used for this purpose as follows. Since we want to discuss circular membranes (drumheads), we first transform the Laplacian in the wave equation (1), Sec. 12.9,

$$u_{tt} = c^2\nabla^2 u = c^2(u_{xx} + u_{yy}) \tag{1}$$

(subscripts denoting partial derivatives) into **polar coordinates** r, θ defined by $x = r\cos\theta$, $y = r\sin\theta$; thus,

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, \qquad \tan\theta = \frac{y}{x}.$$

By the chain rule (Sec. 9.6) we obtain

$$u_x = u_r r_x + u_\theta \theta_x.$$

Differentiating once more with respect to x and using the product rule and then again the chain rule gives

$$\begin{aligned} u_{xx} &= (u_r r_x)_x + (u_\theta\theta_x)_x \\ &= (u_r)_x r_x + u_r r_{xx} + (u_\theta)_x\theta_x + u_\theta\theta_{xx} \\ &= (u_{rr}r_x + u_{r\theta}\theta_x)r_x + u_r r_{xx} + (u_{\theta r}r_x + u_{\theta\theta}\theta_x)\theta_x + u_\theta\theta_{xx}. \end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

Also, by differentiation of r and θ we find

$$r_x = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}} = \frac{x}{r}, \qquad \theta_x = \frac{1}{1 + (y/x)^2}\left(-\frac{y}{x^2}\right) = -\frac{y}{r^2}.$$